中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书

英　　语

《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》编写组　编著

電子工業出版社
Publishing House of Electronics Industry
北京・BEIJING

内 容 简 介

本书以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》和历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试说明以及发展趋势为依据，并结合中等职业学校学生的实际需要编写。全书共分四个部分。第一部分是英语知识运用；对语法中的每一个知识点进行了系统分析，在编写体例上做到考点明晰，重点突出；第二部分是答题策略，包括应试技巧、案例分析和专项训练三个模块，本部分按照考试说明规定的题型及难度系数编写，力求技巧实用，分析到位，训练全面；第三部分是综合训练，共有四套综合训练题，以不同的难度系数、科学的考点设置让学生考前得到有效的规范训练；第四部分是全书练习的参考答案。

本书的编写力求知识系统，重点突出，目标明确，是参加春季招生考试考生的应试必备用书。

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。
版权所有，侵权必究。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书. 英语/《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》编写组编著. —北京：电子工业出版社，2017.11
ISBN 978-7-121-32934-0

Ⅰ. ①中… Ⅱ. ①中… Ⅲ. ①英语课－中等专业学校－升学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①G634

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2017）第 258515 号

责任编辑：华 睿
印 刷：山东汇文印务有限公司
装 订：山东汇文印务有限公司
出版发行：电子工业出版社
北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036
开 本：787×1 092 1/16 印张：12.5 字数：318 千字
版 次：2017 年 11 月第 1 版
印 次：2017 年 11 月第 1 次印刷
定 价：27.00 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题，请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺，请与本社发行部联系，联系及邮购电话：（010）88254888，88258888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zlts@phei.com.cn，盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

本书咨询联系方式：（010）88254408。

丛书前言

《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》是根据当前职业教育改革发展的形势，为适应中等职业学校广大教师和学生的需要，组织富有经验的专家、骨干教师编写的一套考试复习指导丛书。本丛书包括语文、数学和英语。

丛书的编写是以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》为依据，以山东省职业教育教材审定委员会审定的中等职业教育规划教材为主要参考，参照山东省近几年普通高校招生（春季）考试说明，结合山东省的实际情况，广泛征询了广大考生和教师的意见，并吸取当前教学改革的先进成果而编写的。在编写时，我们力求基础知识的整合与系统，强化能力训练，突出对学生解题思路和方法的引导，使学生学会分析问题和解决问题，提高学习能力和应对考试的能力。在内容编排上，三本书的模块大致为：复习要点，即明确需要掌握的知识点及其相关联系，提出复习的要求；解题示例，即选择典型例题、考试试题或某一类题型，分析总结规律，引导学生举一反三，掌握解题技巧；基础训练，即根据近几年本学科考试的主要内容，精心设计了一定数量的练习题，供学生们选择、训练，巩固知识，提高能力；模拟考试，参照历年春季高考的试题，设计了 3～6 套模拟考试题，用于学生强化训练，检测复习效果。同时，在采用统一模块的前提下，三门学科根据各自的特点，突出学科特色，体现灵活性。因此，本丛书具有较强的针对性、指导性和实用性，便于教师的指导和学生的系统复习，希望能对中等职业学校学生的日常学习以及复习考试等方面有所帮助和指导。

由于时间仓促，水平有限，书中难免有不足之处，恳望广大师生在使用过程中提出宝贵意见，以便日后修改和完善。

编写组

2017 年 9 月

前　言

本书以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》（教职成[2009] 7 号）和历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试以及发展趋势为依据，针对各类参加春季招生考试学生的实际情况，本着以考试说明为指导，以提高学生英语知识的综合运用能力为原则编写而成。

编写目标：

1．明确各知识点的考查范围，了解其考查角度，自查对各知识点的掌握程度；

2．熟悉不同题型的答题技巧，提高解题能力；

3．强化考前的规范训练，避免非智力性失误。

结构特点：

全书共分为四个部分。

第一部分为英语知识运用，该部分对词汇提出了要求；对语法中的每一个知识点进行了系统分析并附有跟踪训练；对日常交际用语中的交际功能分为考点分析和跟踪训练两个模块进行了系统地分析。在编写体例上做到考点明晰，重点突出。

第二部分为答题策略，详细讲解了英语知识运用题型、阅读理解题型、短文填空题型、根据情景内容补全对话题型、职场应用题型的答题策略。每一种题型都包括应试技巧、案例分析和专项训练三个模块。其中英语知识运用题型题干设计突出情境化和交际化；阅读理解题型注重选材的趣味性和实用性；短文填空题型加强了对英语基础知识的运用能力的考查；根据情景内容补全对话题型加大了对应用能力提升的考查，内容覆盖面广；职场应用题型设计的题材内容新颖、形式灵活多样并突出职业教育特色。该部分力求技巧实用，分析到位，训练全面。

第三部分为综合训练，共设计有四套综合训练题，以不同的难度系数、科学的考点设置让学生考前得到有效的规范训练。

第四部分为全书练习的参考答案，由于部分练习具有开放性特点，答案不唯一，老师可根据学生情况灵活处理。

本书编写时力求知识系统，重点突出，目标明确，是参加春季招生考试考生的必备用书。

编　者

2017 年 9 月

目 录

第一部分 英语知识运用…… 1

一、词汇…… 1
二、语法…… 1
三、日常交际用语……58

第二部分 答题策略……69

一、英语知识运用……69
二、阅读理解……92
三、短文填空…… 114
四、根据情景内容补全对话…… 124
五、职场应用…… 134

第三部分 综合训练…… 149

综合训练一…… 149
综合训练二…… 155
综合训练三…… 162
综合训练四…… 169

第四部分 参考答案…… 177

第一部分 英语知识运用参考答案 …… 177
第二部分 答题策略参考答案 …… 180
第三部分 综合训练参考答案 …… 190

第一部分

英语知识运用

一、词汇

掌握教育部颁发的《中等职业学校英语教学大纲》（教职成[2009]7 号）、山东省中等职业学校英语课程标准及山东省职业教育教材审定委员会审定的中等职业教育《英语》教材中所规定的词汇。

二、语法

历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试英语考试说明中不仅对词汇的掌握提出了要求，同时也要求考生掌握一定的语法项目。因为只有掌握了一定数量的词汇和语法项目并加以灵活运用，考生才能从容面对我省普通高校招生（春季）考试。

1．名词

名词是用来表示人名、事物名称、时间、地点和抽象概念等的词。

（1）名词的分类。

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="4">普通名词</td><td rowspan="2">可数名词</td><td>个体名词</td><td>表示某类人或物的个体。如：doctor, book</td></tr>
<tr><td>集体名词</td><td>表示若干个体组成的集合体。如：family，police, people</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">不可数名词</td><td>物质名词</td><td>表示不能分为个体的实物，本身不能记数，不能与不定冠词连用。如：air, water</td></tr>
<tr><td>抽象名词</td><td>表示人或者物的状态、品质、感情等抽象概念，本身不能计数，不能与不定冠词连用。如：work, kindness</td></tr>
<tr><td>专有名词</td><td colspan="3">表示特定的或者是独一无二的人、物、人名、地名、组织名称等
如：China, the Great Wall</td></tr>
</table>

（2）名词的复数形式。

A. 大部分可数名词在词尾加“s”变为复数形式。

如：shop-shops, desk-desks, bag-bags

B. 以“-s, -x, -sh, -ch”等结尾的名词后加“-es”变为复数形式。

如：bus-buses, box-boxes, watch-watches, brush-brushes

C. 以“辅音字母+y”结尾的名词，变 y 为 i，然后再加“-es”，变为复数形式。

如：baby-babies, city-cities, story-stories

※但以“元音字母+y”结尾的名词只加“-s”，变为复数形式。

如：boy-boys, key-keys

D. 部分以“-o”结尾的名词，加“-es”变为复数形式。

如：hero-heroes, potato-potatoes, tomato-tomatoes, negro-negroes

但部分以“-o”结尾的名词，加“-s”变为复数形式

如：photo-photos, piano-pianos，radio-radios, zoo-zoos

E. 以“-f”或“-fe”结尾的名词，变“f”或“fe”为“v”再加“es”，变为复数形式。

如：life-lives, knife-knives, shelf-shelves

F. 不规则变化的名词

有些名词属于不规则变化的名词。

① 有些名词变为复数时，改变内部的元音字母。

如：man-men, woman-women, foot-feet, tooth-teeth, mouse-mice, goose-geese

② 有些名词的单数与复数同形。

如：fish-fish, sheep-sheep, deer-deer, Chinese-Chinese, Japanese-Japanese

③ 有些词变复数时，在词尾加-en 或-ren。

如：child-children

④ 姓氏是专有名词，姓氏前加定冠词 the，后加-s 表示“某某一家人”。

如：the Blacks, the Whites, the Wangs

注意

① 以-s 结尾的某些名词，未必都是复数。

如：news（新闻），means（手段、方法），physics（物理），maths（数学），works（工厂），the United States（美国）等。

② 某些名词表示某一含义时，是不可数名词，无复数形式；而当另一种含义时，却是可数名词，有复数形式。如：paper 当“纸”讲时不可数，当“报纸”或“试卷、论文”讲时可数；fish 当“鱼肉”讲时不可数；当“一条或几条鱼”讲时为可数名词，且单复数同形；当做“鱼的种类”讲时也为可数名词，复数形式在词尾加 es。

③ 常见的不可数名词：work（工作），help（帮助），money（金钱），food（食物），damage（破坏），meat（肉），advice（劝告），information（信息），progress（进步），luggage（行李），equipment（设备），furniture（家具），knowledge（知识）等。

④ 不可数名词的量的概念常由量词短语来表示。如：a piece of news（一则消息），a glass of water（一杯水），two cups of tea（两杯茶）等。

（3）名词的所有格。

在句中表示所有关系、所属关系，称为名词的所有格。

A. 表示有生命的东西的名词，通常在单数名词后加 ’s 构成所有格形式。

如：Tim’s desk, my brother’s bike

B. 有些表示时间、距离、地点、城市、国家等名词也可以有所有格。

如：today’s newspaper, two hours’ walk, Shanghai’s factories, China’s industry

C. 名词所有格所修饰的词的省略情况。

如：Whose book is this? —It’s John’s.

I’m studying at my uncle’s.

D. 无生命的名词表示所有关系主要为 of + 名词。

如：a map of the world

E. 双重所有格

“of + 名词’s” 修饰前面的名词，这种结构叫做名词双重所有格。使用名词双重所有格应该注意的问题：

① of 前面名词一定要有 a(n), two, any, some, several, few, another 或 this, that, those 之类的修饰语（这个修饰语一般不是 one 和 the）。

例如：Two classmates of my sister’s will come to join us.

It’s another book of my father ’s.

② of 前面的名词不能是专有名词。如不可以说：the Tom of his father’s

名词所有格的构成：

A. 以-s 结尾的复数名词，只在词尾加 ’ 构成所有格形式。

如：the students’ books, the boys’ toys

B. 不以-s 结尾的复数名词后依然加 ’s 构成所有格形式。

如：Children’s Day, women’s club

C. 以-s 结尾的名词，但不是复数名词，可加’s 也可只加 ’ 构成所有格形式。

如：Charles’(s) mother, my boss’(s) office

D. 如果一样东西为两人所有，则只在后一个名词后面加’s 构成所有格形式。如果不是两人共有的东西，则在这两个名词之后都加’s 构成所有格形式。

如：Lucy and Lily’s room　露西和丽丽合住的房间

Lucy’s and Lily’s rooms 露西住的房间和丽丽住的房间

（4）名词在句中的作用。

A. 作主语

例如：All the stories are very interesting.

Our English teacher is from America.

B. 作宾语

例如：She is drawing a picture.

Mary likes music very much.

C. 作表语

例如：Tom’s sister is a doctor.

All of them are my favourite singers.

D. 作宾语补足语

例如：We call her Xiao Wang.

We elected him monitor.

E. 作定语

例如：I received an invitation letter yesterday.

Do you like wearing cotton shoes?

F. 作同位语

例如：Mr. Black, our English teacher, is very active.

The new desks and chairs are for us, the new students.

G. 作状语

例如：We go to school every day.

Come this way, please.

（5）名词在句中作主语时要和谓语搭配一致。

A. 句子的主语是可数名词的单数形式或不可数名词时，谓语动词要用第三人称单数形式。

例如：Steak tastes delicious.

A good teacher is someone who not only teaches his students knowledge but also teaches them how to be a real person.

B. 句子的主语是复数形式的名词时，谓语动词要用复数形式。

例如：The students are learning English now.

The boys often play football after school.

C. 用 and, both…and 连接的并列主语，谓语动词通常用复数形式。

例如：Mary and I are friends.

Both Susan and Tim live in this nieghbourhood.

D. 由连词 either…or…, neither…nor…, not only…but also…等连接的并列主语，谓语的形式与其最近的主语保持一致。在 There be…句型中，如果有两个以上并列主语，谓语动词常和邻近的，即第一个主语在单复数上保持一致。

例如：Neither you nor I am a student.

Either Sam or Jack is from England.

E. 主语后有 as well as, including, with, together with, like, except, besides 等短语做定语时，谓语动词的形式不受定语影响。

例如：Tony as well as Mike likes football.

The teacher together with his students is going there on foot.

F. 表示时间、价格、数字、度量、国家、单位等名词用作主语时，通常看成一个整体，谓语动词要用单数形式。

例如：Twenty miles is a long distance for a child.

Fifty dollars isn't enough to buy the English dictionary.

The United States is one of the largest countries in the world.

（6）重难点辨析。

A. noise 噪声；sound 声音，声响；voice 人发出的声音。

B. cloth 布；clothes 衣服（上衣、裤子、内衣等）；clothing 服装的总称。

C. profession 职业；job 工作（可数名词）；work 工作（不可数名词）；career 终身职业。

D. bill 账单，支票；charge 要价，收费；cost 代价，成本；price 价格；value 价值；discount 折扣；bargain（讨价后成交货、廉价货）。

E. character 性格，角色，特征，字符；personality 个性；quality 品质，质量；quantity 数量。

F. information 信息（不可数名词）；message 消息，信息（可数名词）；news 消息（不可数名词）；notice 注意，布告，通知；word 词，消息，诺言。

G. award 奖，奖品（工作、成就奖）；money 钱；prize 奖，奖品，奖金（竞赛、抽奖）； reward 报酬，悬赏金（工作、服务等的报答）。

H. condition 条件；position 方位，位置；situation 形式，处境。

I. cause 原因，起因；excuse 借口，理由；reason 理由，原因；explanation 解释，说明。



跟踪训练

1. _____ are watching TV.

A. The Zhang　　B. Zhangs　　C. The Zhangs　　D. Zhang

2. How many _____ are there in the international school?

A. Russian　　B. Italian　　C. Japanese　　D. American

3. _____ wonderful movie! We like it very much.

A. What　　B. What a　　C. How　　D. How a

4. Can you give me some _____ on how to learn English well?

A. suggestions　　B. messages　　C. informations　　D. advices

5. —Do you want any dumplings or steak to eat?

—Neither. I've already ordered two _____.

A. rice　　B. sandwiches

C. sandwich　　D. hamburger

6. Of all the vegetables, I like _____ best.

A. tomatoes　　B. eggs　　C. milk　　D. apples

7. Do you know any friend of my _____?

A. father　　B. father's　　C. fathers'　　D. fathers

8. Can you imagine what life will be like in _____ time?

A. 20 years'　　B. 20 year's　　C. 20-years'　　D. 20-years

9. His clothes _____ new, mine are old.
A. are B. is C. was D. were
10. Last night there was a food accident. The _____ were ill, but no _____ were lost.
A. child, lives B. children, life C. children, lives D. child, life
11. September 10th is _____ in China.
A. Teachers's Day B. Teachers' Day
C. Teacher Day D. Teachers Day
12. Although the town had been attacked by the storm several times, _____ was done.
A. a few damages B. few damages
C. little damage D. a little damage
13. There are thirty _____ doctors in the hospital.
A. woman B. women C. women's D. woman's
14. The cat caught two _____ last night.
A. mouses B. mice C. mouse D. mices
15. My family _____ very pleased about the good news.
A. be B. is C. am D. are
16. They got much _____ from those new books.
A. ideas B. news C. photos D. stories
17. The teacher with his students _____ going on a trip.
A. is B. are C. be D. were
18. These _____ are made of _____, not plastics.
A. glass; glasses B. glass; glass C. glasses; glasses D. glasses; glass
19. — Whose room is this?
— It's _____.
A. Lucy and Lily B. Lucy and Lily's
C. Lucy's and Lily's D. Lucy's and Lily
20. The _____ are searching for the two _____.
A. police; thief B. police; thieves
C. polices; thief D. polices; thieves

2. 代词

代词是指代人和事物的词，主要替代名词以及起名词作用的短语、不定式、动名词、从句或句子，以避免重复。

（1）代词的分类。

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="3">单数</td><td colspan="3">复数</td></tr>
<tr><td>第一人称</td><td>第二人称</td><td>第三人称</td><td>第一人称</td><td>第二人称</td><td>第三人称</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">人称代词</td><td>主格</td><td>I</td><td>you</td><td>he, she, it</td><td>we</td><td>you</td><td>they</td></tr>
<tr><td>宾格</td><td>me</td><td>you</td><td>him, her, it</td><td>us</td><td>you</td><td>them</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">物主代词</td><td>形容词性</td><td>my</td><td>your</td><td>his, her, its</td><td>our</td><td>your</td><td>their</td></tr>
<tr><td>名词性</td><td>mine</td><td>yours</td><td>his, hers, its</td><td>ours</td><td>yours</td><td>theirs</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">反身代词</td><td>myself</td><td>yourself</td><td>himself, herself, itself</td><td>ourselves</td><td>yourselves</td><td>themselves</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">指示代词</td><td colspan="3">this, that</td><td colspan="3">these, those</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">相互代词</td><td>宾格</td><td colspan="6">each other,　one another</td></tr>
<tr><td>所有格</td><td colspan="6">each other’s, one another’s</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">不定代词</td><td>可数</td><td colspan="6">each, one, many, few, a few, both, another, either, neither</td></tr>
<tr><td>不可数</td><td colspan="6">little, a little, much</td></tr>
<tr><td>可数不可数</td><td colspan="6">all, some, none, such, any, other</td></tr>
<tr><td>复合不定代词</td><td colspan="6">anybody, anyone, anything, somebody, someone, something, nobody, nothing, everyone, everybody, everything</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">疑问代词</td><td colspan="6">who, whom, whose, which, what</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">连接代词</td><td colspan="6">whoever, whomever, whichever, whatever</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">关系代词</td><td colspan="6">who, whom, whose, that, which</td></tr>
</table>

（2）人称代词的用法。

A. 人称代词在句中作主语时要用主格，作宾语时用宾格。

例如：We like swimming.

Mr. Smith teaches us English.

I bought a present for her.

B. 多个人称代词作并列主语时，如果是单数形式，排列如下：

第二人称→第三人称→第一人称

如果是复数形式，其排列通常如下：

第一人称→第二人称→第三人称

例如：You, he and I are good friends.

He, some others and I have finished the work together.

We, you and they have been invited to the party.

（3）物主代词的用法。

A. 形容词性物主代词只能用作定语，使用时要注意与其所指代的词保持“人称和数的一致”。

例如：They have done their best.

Wang Hong lent me her bike.

B. 名词性物主代词后面不需要再加名词，在句中可作主语、宾语和表语等。

例如：His shirt is blue. Mine is red.

You may use my dictionary. I will use hers.

C. 名词性物主代词前面通常可与介词连用。

例如：She is a close friend of mine.

This is no fault of yours.

（4）反身代词的用法。

A. 反身代词在句中可作宾语、表语和同位语等。

例如：Please introduce yourself first.

That poor boy was myself.

The thing itself is not important.

B. 常见的带有反身代词的词组。

enjoy oneself	玩得高兴	help oneself to	随意吃
by oneself	独自地	for oneself	为自己
teach oneself	自学		

（5）指示代词的用法。

A. 指示代词“this, that, these, those”在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语和定语等。

例如：This is a map of China and that is a map of the world.

These are jeeps. Those are trucks.

I will give you the answer this week.

Life was difficult in those days.

B. 指示代词“that, those”常用于代替前面提到的事物。

例如：That is exactly what I want to say.

Those are the problems we want to solve.

These machines are better than those we turned out last year.

（6）相互代词的用法。

A. 相互代词“one another 和 each other”表示相互关系，两者用法相似，在句中可作宾语。

例如：We can help each other.

They are pleased with one another.

B. 相互代词也有所有格形式，在句中可作定语。

例如：We should point out each other’s shortcomings.

They have great concern for one another’s studies.

（7）不定代词的用法。

A. every 和 each 的区别：each 指两个或两个以上的人或物中的一个，是“单个”

的意思侧重个体，在句中可作主语、同位语、定语和宾语； every 指三个或三个以上的人或物中的“每一个”的意思，侧重全体，在句中只能作定语。each 和 every(-body, -thing, -one)后惯用单数。

例如：Each of them has a dictionary.

They each got a new copy of the book.

Everyone is here.

Every room is clean and tidy.

Each student has a dictionary.

B. few, many, a few 修饰可数名词；little, much, a little 修饰不可数名词。few, little（不多，少数）表达否定的意思；a few, a little（有一些）表达肯定的意思。

C. nobody, nothing, none 的区别：

nobody 指人，谓语动词用单数形式。nothing 指物，谓语动词用单数形式。有 none of us 而不能用 no one of us。

D. some 和 any 都表示“一些”，都可以代替可数名词与不可数名词；可作主语和宾语。some 多用于肯定句；any 多用于疑问句、否定句。some 有时也可用于希望得到对方肯定回答及表示建议、请求的疑问句中。

包含 some 的复合不定代词，一般用于肯定句；包含 any 的复合不定代词一般用于否定句、疑问句。含有 some 的复合不定代词有时也可用于希望得到对方肯定回答及表示建议、请求的疑问句中。

例如：I have something to say.

Do you have any good ideas?

Would you like something to drink?

E. all 可作代词或形容词，作代词时可表示单数或复数。

例如：All are here.

All the money is spent.

F. either（两者中的任何一个），其否定形式为 neither（两者中没有一个），both（两者都）。当 either, neither 做主语时，谓语动词用单数形式；both 做主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

例如：Both of you are right.

Neither of us wants to go.

Either of the books is OK.

G. 有关 one, another, other, others 的用法。one 表示一个（只…），可替代人或物，其复数形式为 ones。another 表示泛指“另一个”，当表示复数时，用 others。

常用的固定搭配有：

one…the other…

some…others…

some…the others…

例如：She always thinks of others more than herself.

There are two new cars in front of the company. One is mine, and the other is the manager's.

（8）疑问代词的用法。

常用的疑问代词“who, whom, whose, what，which”等，通常用来构成特殊疑问句，在句中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。疑问代词作主语时，句子的谓语动词要根据疑问代词所指代的人或物是单数还是复数来确定。

例如：Who is knocking at the door?

Which is larger, this or that?

Which are heavier, these or those?

（9）关系代词的用法。

关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 引导定语从句。

例如：Television benefits very old people who can't often leave the house.

Lucy is the girl whom（who) we met yesterday.

I have got a friend whose sister is a singer.

This is the car which (that) is made in China.

（10）代词 it 的用法。

A. 指代物、人或前面提到的事情或情况。例如：

例如：It is a nice bag.

—Who is it?

—It's me.

If I could repair the bike, I'd do it myself.

B. 作无人称代词，指代天气、时间、距离等。

例如：It's a fine day.

It's 7 o'clock now.

It is about two kilometers from my home to my school.

C. 常作形式主语或形式宾语，而真正的主语或宾语通常是后面的不定式结构、动名词或 that 从句等。

例如：It's no use sending him over.

It's a pity that you can't come to my birthday party.

I think it easy to answer this question.



跟踪训练

1. —Who is the boy over there?

—_____ is my brother.

A. He　　B. His　　C. Him　　D. Himself

2. —Who is singing in the classroom?

— _____ must be Susan.

A. She　　B. It　　C. He　　D. This

3. —Do you like the pop star Zhou Jielun or the movie star Liu Dehua?
—_____. I'm not their fan.
A. Both　B. Either　C. Neither　D. All
4. _____ skirt is yours?
A. What　B. Whose　C. Where　D. Which
5. —What a hot day! Have you had a drink?
—Yes. But I'd like to have _____.
A. it　B. one　C. other　D. another
6. I find _____ difficult to lose weight.
A. this　B. it　C. that　D. she
7. —Where do _____ come from?
—_____ come from Australia.
A. your; My　B. you; I　C. your; I　D. you; My
8. —Who is the little girl?
—She is a good friend of _____.
A. my　B. mine　C. me　D. her
9. —I saw Tony at the party. But he didn't speak to me _____ evening.
—Maybe he didn't see you.
A. all　B. every　C. either　D. another
10. Edward is new here, so we know _____ about him.
A. nothing　B. something　C. anything　D. everything
11. I've got many books on English. You can borrow _____ if you like.
A. that　B. one　C. it　D. this
12. — Excuse me, can I park my car here?
—Yes. You can park on _____ side of the street.
A. either　B. neither　C. both　D. all
13. The machines made in this factory are better than _____ made in other factories.
A. this　B. these　C. that　D. those
14. John likes China, he often teaches _____ Chinese.
A. him　B. himself　C. his　D. he
15. China is larger than _____ country in Europe.
A. any　B. any other　C. all　D. others
16. _____ will pay a visit to Mr. White.
A. My classmate and me　B. I and my classmate
C. Me and my classmate　D. My classmate and I
17. — Tom has a dictionary. You may go and borrow _____.
— No. I'd rather buy _____ in the bookstore.
A. one, it　B. one, one　C. it, it　D. it, one

18. There are 16 students in this team. Ten of them are boys and _____ are girls.

A. the other B. the others C. others D. other

19. The retired couple have decided to go to college. It's time for _____ to begin a new life.

A. they B. them C. their D. theirs

20. — How are you going to improve _____ this term?

— Work harder than last term.

A. ourselves B. myself C. herself D. yourself

3．形容词

形容词是指修饰名词和部分代词，表示人或事物的性质、状态和特征的词。

（1）形容词的作用与位置。

A. 形容词在句中作定语，一般放在所修饰的名词之前。一个名词有多个形容词修饰时，与名词关系密切的形容词靠近名词。例如：an interesting English film

B. 形容词修饰不定代词 something, anything, everything, nothing 时，要放在不定代词的后面。例如: I have something important to do.

C. 形容词作表语与系动词连用。例如：与 be, grow, get, become, feel, look, keep, smell 等连用。

例如：The room is clean.

It became dark.

It is getting warmer and warmer.

D. 有些形容词只可以作表语。以 a 开头的形容词：alone, awake, asleep, alike, afraid, alive 等。

例如：She is alone, but she is not lonely.

The boy is asleep.

表示健康状况的形容词，例如：ill, well 等。我们通常说 a sick boy 但不说 an ill boy。

E. “the +形容词”可以表示一类，在句中可作主语、宾语等，表示一类人时，看作复数名词。

例如：The young should care for the old.

The old are taken good care of in our country.

F. 形容词作状语可表示伴随状况、原因、结果等。

例如：He went to bed, cold and hungry.

G. 几个形容词修饰一个名词，其排列顺序通常是：

限定词+评议性形容词+描述性形容词（大小+长短+高矮+形状+年龄+新旧+颜色+国籍+材料+作用+类别等）。

例如：There is a tall old grey building.

H. 形容词短语作定语时放在其所修饰名词的后面。

例如：There are shelves full of books in the library.

（2）形容词、副词的原级、比较级和最高级。

A. 原级，即原形，表示同级比较。结构有 as…as, not so (as)…as.

例如：He is as tall as I.

He doesn't run so fast as Tom.

B. 比较级和最高级，通常在形容词和副词后加-er，-est 构成比较级和最高级。多音节词前加 more , most。注意下列不规则变化的形容词：

good/well-better-best, bad/ill-worse-worst, many/much-more-most, little-less-least, far-farther/ further-farthest/furthest , old-elder/older-eldest/oldest

C. 比较级常用结构："比较级+than"，表示一方比另一方…，"less+原级+than"表示一方不如另一方…；"The+比较级+主语+谓语，the+比较级+主语+谓语" 表示"越…，越…"；"比较级+and+比较级"表示"越来越…"；

例如：The deeper you dive into the water, the harder you breathe.

Mary is more beautiful than anyone else in her company.

With the rapid economic development, China's position on the international stage is getting more and more important.

D. 最高级用于三者或三者以上相比较，通常有表示比较范围的介词短语。

例如：China is one of the largest countries in the world.

He is the tallest of the three.

E. no less than /no more than 意思是"不亚于…"、"和…一样"、"只不过…"。

例如：No less than 1000 people are here.

She is no less active than she was.

F. 最高级前应加定冠词 the。

例如：This is the most interesting story.

Shanghai is one of the biggest cities in the world.

G. 原级比较和比较级前可以加上表示倍数、分数、百分数等修饰词，如：twice, three times, 50 percent, one third。

例如：Mary's room is three times as large as mine.

The box is one-third bigger than that one.

Last year the output value of industry was 50 percent higher than that of 1976.

注意

① 用于不可数名词的：

much 许多, little 几乎没有, a little 一些, less 较少, a great amount of 大量的, a great (good) deal of 大量的, a small amount of 少量的。

② 用于可数名词的：

many 许多, few 几乎没有, a few 一些, several 几个, a great (good) many 大量 a great (good, large) number of 大量的。

③ 可数和不可数名词都可以的：

a lot of, lots of 许多, more 更多, most 大多数, plenty of 足够的, some 一些, a quantity of 大量的, quantities of 大量的。

④ 可以修饰比较级的词：much, even, still, a lot, a little, no, rather, any, far 等。



跟踪训练

1. —How old is she?
 —She looks _____ than you, in her twenties.
 A. old B. older C. oldest D. elder
2. _____ you start, the sooner you will be back.
 A. The early B. Earlier C. Early D. The earlier
3. —What bad weather!
 —Yes. The radio says it will be even _____ later on.
 A. bad B. badly C. worse D. worst
4. There's _____ with my watch. I'll have it repaired.
 A. anything wrong B. something wrong
 C. wrong anything D. wrong something
5. —How about this new fur coat?
 —Oh, the price is _____.
 A. too high B. too expensive
 C. very expensive D. so dear
6. If you can jump _____ higher, I'll give you a prize.
 A. most B. more
 C. very D. any
7. —Who is _____ running star in your college?
 —I think Philip is.
 A. famous B. more famous
 C. the most famous D. less famous
8. Tom is taller than _____ in his class.
 A. any student B. all the students
 C. any other student D. every student
9. My room is _____ yours.
 A. three times as large as B. as three times large as
 C. as large as three times D. as large three times as
10. —Is Weiqi a popular chess game?
 —Yes. It's getting _____ popular. Many people like it.
 A. much and more B. more and much
 C. more and more D. most and most

11. The reason why so many people sit before the television tonight is that there will be a _____ show.
A. living　　B. live　　C. alive　　D. lived

12. Tom is _____ than Jack.
A. two years older　　B. two years old
C. older two years　　D. two-year old

13. _____ should study hard.
A. Young　　B. Younger　　C. Youngest　　D. The young

14. — Do you think time is money?
—Yes, but I think it is _____ money.
A. important than　　B. as more important as
C. more important than　　D. so important as

15. English is one of _____ spoken in the world.
A. the important language　　B. the most important languages
C. most important language　　D. the most important language

16. —Who will you ask for help with the work, Lucy or Lily?
—Lily. She is much _____.
A. careful　　B. more careful　　C. most careful　　D. more carefully

17. —This is a good place for a picnic.
— Yes. It couldn't be _____.
A. better　　B. best　　C. worst　　D. worse

18. This is _____ movie that I've ever seen till now.
A. most moving　　B. more moved
C. the most moving　　D. the most moved

19. The young man is _____ carry the heavy box.
A. strong enough to　　B. enough strong to
C. not strong enough　　D. strong enough

20. The Huanghe River is the second _____ river in China.
A. long　　B. longer　　C. longest　　D. the longest

4．副词

副词是指在句子中表示行为或状态特征的词。

（1）副词的作用与位置。

A. 副词在句中一般用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或用来修饰整个句子。
例如：He runs quickly.
Mary is much cleverer than her younger sister.

B. 时间、地点副词一般放在句尾。两者同时出现，地点副词放在时间副词前面。
例如：We went to the Zhongshan Park yesterday.
或 Yesterday we went to the Zhongshan Park.

表示不确定的时间，例如 always, seldom, often 等常用在行为动词之前，情态动词、助动词、be 动词等之后。

例如：He often comes late.

The apple tree is seldom fruitful.

I will never forget your kindness.

C. 程度副词通常放在被修饰词之前，但 enough 除外。

例如：He is very sorry for it.

You are old enough to do this.

D. 方式副词修饰不及物动词时放在被修饰词后，修饰及物动词时放在宾语后，宾语较长时，也可放在动宾之间。

例如：He works hard.

Mr. Wang wrote some letters carefully to his friends.

（2）副词的比较级和最高级的变换形式与形容词基本相同。



跟踪训练

1. —Excuse me, where is Xinhua Bookstore?
—Just 200 meters away. You can find it _____.
A. easy B. hard C. easily D. hardly

2. —Excuse me, Miss Smith. Could you tell me how to improve my spoken English?
—Ok. The best way is to practice _____.
A. as quick as possible B. as quicker as possible
C. as much as possible D. as more as possible

3. Tom has been to Japan, I have _____ been there.
A. too B. either C. also D. else

4. He arrived in London on Monday, two days _____ he left for New York.
A. lately B. late C. later D. latter

5. We will meet again _____ next time.
A. sometimes B. sometime C. some time D. some times

6. Those old men who sent money to children were _____ spoken of at yesterday's meeting.
A. highly B. high C. wide D. widely

7. —I haven't been to Guilin yet.
—I haven't been there, _____.
A. too B. also C. either D. neither

8. I've told him several times but he _____ doesn't understand.
A. yet B. already C. no longer D. still

9. It is raining _____ outside. We'd better stay at home.
A. heavy　B. heavily　C. hardly　D. badly

10. —Ms. Lin is very popular among the students.
—Yes. Her classes are _____ lively and interesting.
A. sometimes　B. hardly　C. never　D. always

11. Cycling is a _____ sport and I believe I will lose my weight _____.
A. relax; quickly　B. relaxing; quick
C. relaxing; quickly　D. relax; quick

12. Don't worry, sir. I'm sure I can run _____ to catch up with my classmates.
A. slowly enough　B. enough slowly
C. fast enough　D. enough fast

13. — How do you like your teacher of English?
—Well, no one teaches _____ here.
A. well　B. good　C. best　D. better

14. The old writer lives _____，but he doesn't feel _____.
A. alone; alone　B. alone; lonely
C. lonely; lonely　D. lonely; alone

15. Of all the students in our class, Mary writes _____.
A. very carefully　B. the most carefully
C. more carefully　D. the most careful

16. — How are you getting on with your classmates?
— Very _____.
A. good　B. better　C. best　D. well

17. Today we do our homework at home _____.
A. than usual　B. often　C. usually　D. as usual

18. Do you need _____ explanation to the question?
A. more further　B. any further　C. even farther　D. most farther

19. The experiment was _____ easier than we had expected.
A. more　B. much more　C. more much　D. much

20. I think he is one of the best men you've _____ found.
A. never　B. already　C. ever　D. once

5．数词

数词是指表示数目多少和顺序先后的词。

（1）数词分基数词、序数词两大类，前者表示数目，后者表示顺序。

大多数序数词由基数词加-th 构成，如：fourth, sixth, one hundredth 等。以 y 结尾的基数词变为序数词时，先把 y 变为 i，再加-eth 如：twenty-twentieth, forty-fortieth 等。下面几个基数词的序数词形式是不规则形式：one-first, two-second, three-third, five-fifth, eight-eighth, nine-ninth, twelve-twelfth 。

（2）用基数词表示顺序，其位置在名词之后，用序数词表示顺序，其位置在名词之前，须用定冠词。Class One, the first class, Bus No.25, the No.25 Bus 等。

（3）表示年代用“in+the+整 10 的数词复数形式”。另外，数词前还可用形容词 early, late, middle 等修饰。如：in the 1990s 或 in the early nineteen nineties。

（4）表示某人大约的年龄，用整 10 数的基数词的复数形式，如：in one’s forties, in one’s fifties。

（5）基数词 hundred, thousand, million, billion 表示确切数目，与具体数词连用时，用单数形式，如：two hundred students；如果加 s 则表示不确切数目，通常与 of 连用。如：hundreds of students，thousands of people 等。

（6）以基数词合成的定语，其中名词用单数。如：a five-year-old boy, a four-star hotel 等。

（7）如果没有其他修饰词，序数词前要加定冠词 the。

（8）年、月、日的书写方法有 February 12^{th}, 2007; 12 February, 2007 或 12^{th} (of) February，2007 读作 February the twelfth, two thousand and seven 或 the twelfth of February, two thousand and seven。

（9）分数的表示方式：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于 1 时，序数词用复数形式。例如: 2/3—two thirds。注意二分之一、四分之一、四分之三有特殊表达法，分别是 one half, one quarter, three quarters。

（10）百分数的表示方式：基数词+percent，其中 percent 没有复数，以它所修饰的名词来判断谓语的单复数

例如：Twenty percent of the students agree with you.

Thirty percent of time passes.

（11）用基数词表示时间。所有的时间都可以用 “小时 + 分钟”直接读。例如：6:10 six ten；如果所表述的时间在半小时之内，可以用“分钟 + past + 小时” 例如：6:10—ten past six；如果所表述的时间在半小时之外，可以用“（相差的）分钟 + to + （下一）小时” 例如：10:35—twenty-five to eleven；如果所表述的时间恰好为半小时，可以用“half + past + 小时” 例如：11:30—half past eleven；如果所表述的分钟和 15 有关， 还会有另外一种表达法：（15 分钟又叫一刻钟：a quarter） 9:15—a quarter past nine；3:45—a quarter to four。另外英语中的 noon 和 midnight 可分别直接表示白天和夜晚的 12 点。

（12）倍数的表示方式：“一倍”用 once；“两倍”用 twice；“三倍及以上”用“基数词+times”例如：five times。



跟踪训练

1. The People ’s Republic of China was founded _____.

A. on October the first, 1949　　B. in October the first, 1949

C. on October one, 1949　　D. on October first one, 1949

2. There are six _____ students in our school.

A. hundreds　　B. hundreds of　　C. hundred　　D. hundred of

3. We are going to learn _____ next week.

A. Lesson Twelve　　B. Lesson Twelfth

C. Twelfth Lesson　　D. The Lesson Twelfth

4. He served in the army in _____, when he was in _____ .

A. 1980's, twenties　　B. 1980s, twenties

C. the 1980's, her twenties　　D. the 1980s, his twenties

5. Ask _____ when you want something.

A. 301 Room　　B. 301 room　　C. Room 301　　D. the 301 room

6. —What time is it now?

—It's _____.

A. fifty six　　B. fifty past six

C. ten to six　　D. six past fifty

7. _____ of people choose to stay in hotels when they go abroad.

A. Two third　　B. Two thirds　　C. Second three　　D. Second thirds

8. —Excuse me. Where is Mr. Green's office?

—It's on _____ floor.

A. seven　　B. seventh　　C. the seven　　D. the seventh

9. Over _____ of the surface of the earth _____ covered with water.

A. seventy percents, are　　B. seventy percent, is

C. seventy percents, is　　D. seventy percent, are

10. —What's the date today?

—It's _____.

A. Sunday　　B. August nine

C. the first of May　　D. first May

11. —How was your weekend?

—Wonderful. It was my daughter's _____ birthday. We had a big party.

A. the ninth　　B. the nineth　　C. ninth　　D. nineth

12. It's never too late to learn. The old man began to learn to drive a car at the age of _____.

A. fifty-five　　B. fifty-fifth　　C. fiftieth-five　　D. fiftieth-fifth

13. Is it _____ for you to go to Beijing?

A. the one time　　B. the first time　　C. first time　　D. one time

14. —Can you write the number three billion, eighty-five million, six hundred?

— _____.

A. 3,085,600,000　　B. 3,850,006,000　　C. 3,085,000,600　　D. 3,850,600,000

15. It's reported that nearly _____ foreign kids joined a British boarding school last

year, and _____ of them were from China.

A. nine thousand, a third　　B. nine thousand, first third

C. nine thousand of, one three　　D. nine thousands of, one third

16._____ of the workers in our factory _____ from Henan.

A. Eighty percent, comes　　B. Eighty percent, come

C. Eighty percents, comes　　D. Eighty percents, come

17. The road is over _____ meters long.

A. six hundred and fifty-two　　B. six hundreds and fifty-two

C. six hundred, fifty-two　　D. six hundred, fifty and two

18. A _____ girl named Dong Xinyi looked after her disabled father.

A. three-year-old　B. three-years-old　C. three years old　　D. three year old

19. About _____ of the students in Grade Nine this year were born in the _____.

A. three fifths, 1996　　B. three fifths, 1990s

C. third fifth, 1996　　D. third fifths, 1990s

20. He is very healthy though he is _____.

A. in the eighties　B. in his eighties　C. in his eighty　　D. in eighty

6．介词

用来表明名词、代词（或相当于名词的其他词类、短语或从句）与句中其他词的关系的词叫介词。介词是虚词，不能重读，不能单独做句子成分，需要和它后面的词共同充当句子成分。

（1）about 周围，大约，关于。

例如：He walked about the room.

It’s about 6 o’clock.

What are you talking about?

固定词组：how/what about

（2）across 穿过，跨过，在…对面。

例如：Walk across the park.

The post office is just across the street.

（3）after 在…之后，仿照/追求

例如：After you，sir.

Read after me, please.

After school I go home.

固定词组：look after，year after year

（4）beside 与 besides。

beside 在…旁边，besides 除…之外，还…（包括在一定的范围内）。

例如：He sat beside me.

There are five of us besides John.

（5）except 除…之外，从整体中除去一部分；except for 说明整个情况后，对细节加以纠正。

例如：We have lessons every day except Sunday.

He is a good man except for his hot temper.

（6）in 与 at 表示地点区别: in 表示大地方，at 表示小地方。

例如：I live at No.25 Nanjing road in Qingdao.

（7）in，at，on 表示时间区别： in 用于世纪、年份、季节、月份等表示时间的名词前； at 用于时刻，点钟等词前； on 则用于具体某一天、某一日期、 某一星期几等词前面。表示某一天的上午、下午、晚上时应用 on 而不用 in，如：on Sunday morning , on a summer night，on a foggy morning 等。

固定词组：

at once（立刻，马上）；at home（在家，在国内）

at most /least（至多/少）；at first（起初,开始）；at last（最后）；at night（晚上）；at the end of（在…结束时/末端）；be good at（擅长）。

in a hurry（急忙的）；in time（及时）；on time（准时）；in fact（实际上）；

in one’s opinion（依某人看）；in all（总计）；in place of（代替）；in case（如果，万一）；in the future（在将来）。

（8）for 为，替代， 对于，赞成，代…，就…而言，因为…

例如：Thank you for your help.

What do you have for lunch?

We leave Qingdao for Beijing.

It is important for us to study English well.

固定词组：

care for（照顾，喜欢）；look for（寻找）；for example（例如）；wait for（等候）；be for（赞成）。

（9）on 在…上，有关…等。

例如：There is a book on the table.

He went to the U.S.A on business.

The teacher gave me some advice on how to study English.

固定词组：

on one hand…on the other hand （一方面…另一方面）；on the left/right（在左边/右边）；live on（以…为生）；on duty（值日）；call on sb.（拜访某人）；depend on（依靠）；on holiday（度假）。

（10）of 表示所属关系、特征、同位关系等。

例如：He is a friend of mine.

Beijing is the capital of China.

固定词组：

of course（当然）；be proud of（为…感到自豪）；think of（想起）；be fond of（喜欢，爱好）；because of（因为）；be made of（由…做成）。

（11）along 沿着。

例如：He was walking along the bank of the river the whole afternoon.

（12）before 在…前面，在…之前。

例如：They arrived in Beijing the day before yesterday.

Before having meals, wash your hands.

（13）by 在…旁，靠，用，按（程度、尺寸、数量），到…为止，经过。

例如：The novel was written by Lu Xun.

He sat by the window.

I go to school by bus.

We had learned 1000 English words by the end of last term.

固定词组：

one by one（一个接一个的）；by the way（顺便问一下）；

by oneself（独自一人）；

by air/train/bus/ship（乘飞机、火车、汽车、轮船等）。

（14）from 从…，离…，来自于…，由于…

例如：Where are you from?

His school is only five minutes from her home.

固定词组：

be different from（不同于）；come/be from（来自于）；from the beginning to the end（从头到尾）；from now on（从现在起）。

（15）between 两者之间；among 在…中间， 在…之中（三者或三者以上）。

例如：He will come back between nine and ten o’clock.

The teacher sat among the students in the classroom.

（16）with 和，同，与…，对…，用…，有…，由于…等。

例如：The land is covered with snow.

I agreed with you.

固定词组：

go on with（继续）；catch up with（赶上）；get / keep in touch with（和…取得 / 保持联系）

（17）over, above; under, below over 和 under 表示垂直上下方；above 和 below 表示位置的高低，表示温度的高低也可用 above 和 below。

例如：There is a bridge over the river.

The temperature will be above zero.

（18）to 到…时间，到某地，对…，给…等。

例如：It’s ten to four o’clock.

How to get to the station?



跟踪训练

1. Children often grow up to be similar _____ the adults they live with.

A. to　　B. for　　C. with　　D. at

2. —What’s the festival about?

—It’s a time _____ people to express thanks.

A. for　　B. of　　C. to　　D. with

3. —How are you going to the Summer Palace?

—We are going there _____ bike.

A. for　　B. at　　C. of　　D. by

4. I’m writing to apply _____ the position as a computer programmer that you recently advertised in Qilu Daily.

A. for　　B. within　　C. of　　D. out

5. —Can you tell me the way _____ the nearest car park?

—Drive to Main Street. It’s on the right.

A. to　　B. on　　C. at　　D. for

6. I have learned another two foreign languages _____ English.

A. besides　　B. on　　C. except　　D. except for

7. _____ the end of last term, we had finished the book.

A. At　　B. On　　C. In　　D. By

8. _____ the help of the teacher, I have made much progress _____ my English.

A. Under; in　　B. Under; with　　C. In; with　　D. With; in

9. —It’s necessary for us to take one hour’s exercise every day.

— I agree _____ you.

A. with　　B. at　　C. on　　D. to

10. —What does she look like?

—She is pretty _____ long blonde hair.

A. from　　B. with　　C. for　　D. of

11. Some people are used to getting up late _____ a cold morning.

A. on　　B. in　　C. at　　D. of

12. — What shall we buy for Lucy as a present?

— Let’s buy a new bike for her. Her bike breaks down from time to time _____.

A. after all　　B. above all　　C. at all　　D. in all

13. Taiwan lies _____ the east of Fujian, _____ the southeast of China.

A. on; in B. to; in C. on; to D. in; to

14. They held a ceremony _____ those killed in the battle.

A. in honor of B. instead of

C. in favor of D. by means of

15. I want to know what happened _____ my friend. I haven't heard _____ her recently.

A. on; of B. to; from C. to; of D. on; from

16. The young singer is quite popular _____ the public. She's made a remarkable achievement _____ a girl of her age.

A. with; at B. to; for C. with; for D. for; at

17. That woman will quarrel _____ everybody _____ anything.

A. about; about B. about; with C. with; about D. with; with

18. We should divide all the potatoes _____ two piles and separated the good ones _____ the bad ones.

A. from; by B. into; from C. into; into D. from; into

19. They said the building would be completed _____ a year.

A. after B. for C. in D. about

20. — These boxes are too heavy for me to carry.

— Here, I'll give you a hand _____ them.

A. for B. to C. with D. by

7．冠词

英语中常用 a/an/the 来说明名词所表示的人或事物，这三个词常位于名词的前面，故称之为冠词。冠词不能脱离名词独立存在，不能单独做句子成分。

（1）不定冠词 a, an 的基本用法。

A. a (an) 用来修饰可数名词单数形式。在以辅音音素（不是辅音字母）开头的名词前用 a，以元音音素开头的名词前用 an。

例如：an hour, an apple, a boy, a book 等。

B. 不定冠词 a(an)与名词连用，可表示一类人或物。也可用来指量，表达“一个”的含义。

例如：A desk has four legs.

A child needs love.

I'll be back in a day or two.

A boy is waiting for you.

C. a(an)用在一些固定词组中。如 have a good time, have a rest, a few, a little, a lot of, have a cold 等。

（2）定冠词 the 的基本用法。

A. 特指用法，指特定的或上文提到过的人或物。

例如：A girl is talking with Tom.

The girl must be Helen.

B. 指世界上独一无二的东西，例如：the sun, the earth, the moon, the world 等。

C. 在由普通名词构成的国家、党派等专有名词前以及江、河、湖、海、山川、群岛、沙漠等名词前用定冠词 the。如：the Atlantic, the United States, the Yellow River 等。

D.“the+形容词”可以表示一类人，谓语动词要用复数形式。例如：the rich（富人），the poor（穷人），the young（年青人），the old（老年人）。

E. 姓氏复数前加 the 表示某一家人，谓语动词要用复数形式。例如：the Browns（布朗一家）。

F. 用在序数词，以及形容词的比较级和最高级前。例如：the first, the tallest, the more…the more 等。

G. 常用的词组或习惯说法有：on the left (right), in the east/west, in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, on the other hand, in the end 等。

H. 乐器前一般加定冠词：play the violin, play the piano。

（3）下列情况一般不加冠词。

A. 专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词、人名、地名等名词前一般不加冠词，例如：China, America。

B. 季节、假日、月份、星期、节日、一日三餐名词前一般不加冠词。例如：May Day, Sunday, winter, breakfast 等。

C. 某些固定词组中不用冠词。例如：go to school , go to bed , in class, at noon , by bus 等。

D. 学科、球类、棋类、称呼、表示头衔职务的名词前不加冠词，如：play basketball，study English 等。



跟踪训练

1. —Will you get there by _____ train?

—No, I’ll take _____ taxi.

A. /; a　　B. a; the　　C. /; /　　D. the; a

2. I don’t like playing _____ volleyball，I like playing _____ violin.

A. the; the　　B. a; a　　C. /; the　　D. the; /

3. —Can you tell me where _____ Room 202 is, please?

—It is on _____ second floor.

A. /; the　　B. a; the　　C. the; the　　D. a; the

4. There is _____ picture on _____ wall. I like _____ picture.

A. a; the; the　　B. a; the; a　　C. the; a; a　　D. a; an; the

5. We can't live without _____ air.

A. the B. a C. an D./

6. —What's the matter with you?

—I caught _____ bad cold and had to stay in _____ bed.

A. the; the B. a; the C. a; a D. a; /

7. —Where are _____ students?

—They are in _____ school library.

A. the; the B. /; the C. /; a D. a; /

8. Jane is _____ European and Jack is _____ American.

A. an; an B. a; an C. an; a D. a; a

9. September _____ tenth is _____ Teachers' Day.

A. the; / B. the; the C. the; a D. a; the

10. Thanks for giving me _____ I wanted.

A. the information B. a information

C. an information D. one information

11. If you grow up in _____ large family, you are more likely to develop _____ ability to get on well with others.

A. /; an B. an; the C. the; an D. a; the

12. Mrs. Taylor has _____ 8-year-old daughter who has _____ gift for painting –she has won two national prizes.

A. a; a B. an; the C. an; a D. the; a

13. After _____ dinner he gave Mr. Richardson a ride to _____ Capital Airport.

A .the; a B. a; the C. /; a D. /; the

14. The book tells _____ life story of John Smith, who left _____ school and worked for a newspaper at the age of 16.

A. the; the B. a; the C. the; / D. a; /

15. Tom owns _____ larger collection of _____ books than any other student in our class.

A. the; / B. a; / C. a; the D. /; the

16. For a long time they walked without saying _____ word. Jim was the first to break _____ silence.

A. the; a B. a; the C. a; / D. the; /

17. The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have _____ third one because _____ second one is rather too small.

A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a

18. It's said that _____ apple _____ day keeps the doctor away.

A. a; an B. an; a C. the; the D. an; the

19. We should offer the seats to _____ old on the bus.

A. an　　B. /　　C. the　　D. a

20. Chairman Xi Jinping had _____ friendly talk with US President Trump in _____ America in April, 2017.

A. a; /　　B. the; /　　C. /; the　　D. a; an

8．动词和动词短语

动词是用来描述主语的动作行为或状态的词，在句子中做谓语，用来说明主语是什么、处于什么状态或做什么。

（1）动词的分类。

动词的分类		用　法	例　句
实义动词	及物动词	一般情况下，其后要跟宾语意义才完整	Raise your hand if you have questions
	不及物动词	动词之后不能跟宾语	Don't run. It's dangerous
系动词（be, feel, look, get, keep…）		系动词后跟表语	You look young for your age
助动词（do, does, did, has, have, had, will…）		用来帮助构成各种时态、语态、语气、句式结构等	I have finished my homework
情态动词（can, may, must…）		与动词原形连用，具有词汇意义	He may lose his way

（2）动词的基本形式。

英语中动词有五种基本形式：原形，一般现在时的第三人称单数，过去式，过去分词，现在分词。

A．一般现在时的第三人称单数。

规　则	动词原形	单数形式
一般动词加 s	win	wins
以 sh, ch, s, x, o 结尾的动词加 es	finish, catch, do	finishes, catches, does
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，变 y 为 ies	study	studies

B．规则动词的过去式和过去分词。

规　则	动词原形	过去式	过去分词
一般情况加 ed	help, look, work	helped, liked, worked	helped, liked, worked
词尾为不发音的字母 e，加 d	like, live, love	liked, lived, loved	liked, lived, loved
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，变 y 为 ied	try, study, cry	tried, studied, cried	tried, studied, cried
重读闭音节结尾的动词，双写末尾的辅音字母加 ed	plan, stop, nod	planned, stopped, nodded	planned, stopped, nodded

C．现在分词。

规　则	动词原形	现在分词
一般情况下直接加 ing	study	studying
词尾为不发音的字母 e,去掉 e 加 ing	like	liking
重读闭音节结尾的动词，双写末尾的辅音字母加 ing	begin, put, stop	beginning, putting, stopping
少数以 ie 结尾的动词，先变 ie 为 y，再加 ing	die, lie, tie	dying, lying, tying

（3）动词短语。

一些动词常与名词、副词、介词搭配构成固定的动词短语表达固定的词义，其作用相当于一个动词。

动词短语的主要类型及用法

A．动词+介词 后面跟宾语时，只能放在介词之后。例如：apply for 申请；talk about 谈论；come across 偶然遇见；come to 合计；listen to 听；look at 看；look for 寻找；reply to 回答；deal with 处理；worry about 担心；hear of 听说；look after 照顾；aim at 瞄准；agree with 同意；call on 拜访，号召；call for 去接，去取。

B．动词+副词 后面跟宾语时，若宾语是名词，可以放在动词和副词之间，也可以放在副词的后面；若宾语是代词，要放在动词和副词之间。例如：look up 查阅； give out 放出，分发；give up 放弃； take off 起飞，脱下；put down 放下；hand out 分发，交给；break down 出故障；break out 战争、火灾等发生。

C．动词+副词+介词 后面跟宾语时，放在介词后面。例如：catch up with 赶上；end up with 以…告终；go on with 继续做某事；come up with 提出，想出。

D．动词+名词+介词 后面跟宾语时，放在介词后面。例如：catch hold of 抓住；get

rid of 摆脱掉；make friends with 交朋友；make fun of 取笑；make use of 利用；pay attention to 注意；take part in 参加；take care of 照看；take the place of 代替。

E．be+形容词+介词 例如： be fond of 喜欢；be familiar with 熟悉；be suitable for 适合于；be used to 习惯于。



跟踪训练

1. Knowledge and learning are important if we want to be successful, but they may also _____ our thinking.

A. direct　　B. limit　　C. change　　D. improve

2. —As long as you have dreams, something nice will happen.
—But I don't think I am smart enough to _____ my dreams.

A. realize　　B. manage　　C. satisfy　　D. arrive

3. —Zhang Li is old enough to _____ his own living.
—I think so.

A. win　　B. gain　　C. take　　D. make

4. —Have you _____ to the e-mail?
—No, I haven't. I'll read it.

A. replied　　B. answered　　C. sent　　D. got

5. —What' s the departure time of the flight?
—It'll _____ at 14:00 this afternoon.

A. take out　　B. get on　　C. take off　　D. get to

6. There are direct buses from Yantai to Tai'an every day. It _____ about eight hours.

A. spends　　B. takes　　C. pays　　D. costs

7. I'll _____ you some stamps.

A. bring　　B. take　　C. have　　D. make

8. We've decided to _____ the meetings.

A. put on　　B. put up　　C. put off　　D. put away

9. —Mike, are you free? What about playing table tennis together? I have _____ a club.
—It sounds exciting.

A. joined in　　B. joined　　C. took part in　　D. attended

10. —Can I help you?
—I'm _____ a leather jacket.

A. looking up　　B. looking for　　C. looking at　　D. looking out

11. Without proper lessons, you could _____ a lot of bad habits when playing the piano.

A. give up　　B. catch up　　C. keep up　　D. pick up

12. _____ this article and tell me what you think of it.

A. Look up　　B. Look on　　C. Look into　　D. Look through

13. —It's a good idea. But who's going to _____ the plan?
—I think Tom and Mike will.
A. carry out B. get through C. take in D. set aside

14. We _____ the last bus and didn't have any money for taxi, so we had to walk home.
A. reached B. lost C. missed D. caught

15. After discussing, the students _____ some good ideas to work on the project.
A. put up B. set up C. caught up with D. came up with

16. Wearing white can help people _____ when they feel stressed.
A. fall down B. calm down C. look down D. come down

17. I'm not sure whether I can hold a party in the open air, because it _____ the weather.
A. stands for B. depends on C. lives on D. agrees with

18. No one can be right all the time. When people make mistakes, we shouldn't _____ them.
A. wait for B. send for C. knock at D. laugh at

19. —Could you please tell me how to _____ "red envelop(红包)"on WeChat?
—Sure. Let me show you.
A. give away B. give out C. give up D. give back

20. I like it very much and it can _____ me _____ to achieve my dream.
A. cheer, up B. connect, with C. let, down D. take, up

9．动词的时态

动词主要表示动作，其次表示状态。动作和状态的发生有一定的时间和表现方式，这就是英语中动词的时态。

（1）一般现在时。

构成：表示动作时，用动词原形或动词的第三人称单数形式，变为疑问句或否定句时要加 do/does don't/doesn't；表示状态时，用系动词 be (am, is, are)+表语，变为疑问句或否定句时要把系动词提前或在其后加 not。

用法：

A．表示经常发生的动作或存在的状态。

例如：Mary lives in New York.

My father is always busy on weekends.

B．表示客观事实或普遍真理。

例如：The earth moves round the sun.

Two times five is ten.

C. 在时间、条件、方式、让步状语从句中，用一般现在时表示将来的动作。

例如：Tell him about it when he comes.

We'll start as soon as you are ready.

If I am free tomorrow, I will go shopping with you.

（2）一般过去时。

构成：表示动作时，用动词过去式，变为疑问句或否定句时要加 did/ didn't；表示状态时，用系动词 be (was, were)+表语，变为疑问句时要把系动词提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

A．表示过去某一时间内发生的动作或存在的状态。常与表示过去的时间状语连用。如：yesterday, last week/ year, in 1990, just now, the other day, two years ago, an hour ago, when I was young 等。

例如：He was born in 1987.

We had a class meeting yesterday afternoon.

What did you do just now?

B．表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。

例如：When he was in the university, he wrote to his parents once a month.

We got up at five every morning when we were in the countryside.

（3）一般将来时。

构成：由助动词 will/ shall+动词原形，变为疑问句时要把助动词 will/shall 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

A．表示将要发生的动作或存在的状态。常与表示将来的时间状语连用。

如：tomorrow, next week/ month/ year, soon, in a few days, the day after tomorrow 等。

例如：I will go to Shanghai tomorrow.

They will return to their hometown in a few days.

B．表示将来经常发生的动作。

例如：We will come to see you every Sunday.

They will go to the cinema twice a month.

C．一般将来时的其他表示法

a．be going to +动词原形，表示打算去做或可能发生的事。

例如：He is not going to do foolish things like that.

We are going to have a meeting to discuss it.

Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.

b．有些词，如：come, go, leave, start, arrive 等，可用现在进行时代替将来时。

例如：She is leaving for America tomorrow.

I'm coming.

（4）现在进行时。

构成：由助动词 be (am, is, are)+动词现在分词，变为疑问句时要把助动词 be(am, is, are)提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

A．表示说话时正在进行的动作。

例如：What are you doing now?

We're cleaning the classroom.

B．表示当前一段时间内的活动或现阶段正在进行的动作。

例如：What are you doing these days?

They are planting trees these days.

（5）现在完成时。

构成：由助动词 have/ has+动词过去分词构成。变为疑问句时要把助动词 have/ has 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

A．表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果。常与之搭配的时间状语有：already, yet, not…yet, just, never, ever 等。

例如：The concert has already started.

We haven't finished the work yet.

Have you ever been to the Great Wall?

B．表示过去已经开始，持续到现在（也许还会继续进行下去）的动作或状态。常和表示一段时间的状语连用，如：since, for, these days, so far, in the past/last ten years 等。

例如：We have studied English for five years.

They have been in this city since 1990.

We have known each other since we were children.

C．现在完成时与一般过去时的区别。

两种时态都表示过去发生的动作，但现在完成时强调动作与现在的关系、对目前的影响或结果等，不能与表示明确的过去时间连用。

例如：He worked in this company in 2000.

He has worked in this company since 2000.

（6）过去进行时。

构成：

由助动词 was/ were+动词现在分词，变为疑问句时要把助动词 was/ were 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

过去进行时表示过去某段时间或某一时刻正在发生或进行的行为或动作。常与之搭配的时间状语有：at this time yesterday, at that time 或以 when 引导的谓语动词是一般过去时的时间状语等。

例如：At this moment yesterday, I was packing for camp.

What were you doing at eight last night?

（7）过去完成时。

构成：由助动词 had +动词过去分词，变为疑问句时要把助动词 had 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：过去完成时是表示在过去某一时间或某一动作之前已经发生或完成的动作、事情。它表示的是发生在“过去的过去”的动作，只有在和过去某个时间或动作相比较的时候才会使用过去完成时。

A. 用在“after / before / when + 过去时态从句”或有“by+过去时间”的句子中。例如：by then, by\ before nine o’clock yesterday, by the end of last year, by the age of twenty, by the time I arrived …

例如：Mother had already cooked supper before I returned home.

By the end of 2016, China had set up 512 Confucius Institutes in 130 countries all over the world.

B. 常用在主句为一般过去时的宾语从句中。如 told, said, knew, heard, thought, asked 等动词后的宾语从句。

例如：My father asked me if I had finished reading that book.

She said (that) she had never been to Paris.

C. 现在完成时和过去完成时的区别：现在完成时强调对现在的影响或结果，过去完成时强调对过去的影响或结果。

（8）过去将来时态。

构成：由助动词 would +动词原形，变为疑问句时要把助动词 would 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

A. 过去将来时表示从过去某一时间来看将要发生的某个动作或存在的某种状态。常用于宾语从句中，当主句为过去时，宾语从句表示将要发生的事情时常用过去将来时。

例如：Mary told me that she would go to Shanghai by plane.

He said he would come here the next Friday.

B. 过去将来时的其他表示法。

a. was / were going to + 动词原形。

例如：No one knew when he was going to finish his homework.

He told us that he was going to attend the meeting.

b. come, go, arrive, leave, die 等瞬时动词，用在过去进行时态中表示过去将来。was / were +现在分词。

例如：He was leaving the next day.

We were informed that the leaders were coming to our school soon.

跟踪训练

1. —What are you doing here?
—I _____ for Tom.
A. wait B. am waiting C. will wait D. was waiting
2. —What did you do after school yesterday?
—I _____ basketball with my friends.
A. play B. played C. will play D. am playing
3. —It's raining! When did it start?
—I don't know exactly. In fact, it _____ all this morning.
A. lasts B. has lasted C. lasted D. will last
4. —_____ you mind my opening the window?
—_____. Please open the window.
A. Do; Yes B. Can; No C. Do; No D. Can; Yes
5. —Sam, do you know if Alice _____ to my party next week?
—I think she will come if she _____ free.
A. comes; is B. comes; will be
C. will come; is D. will come; will be
6. It _____ me a long time to do the homework last night.
A. took B. takes C. has taken D. had taken
7. —Shush, be quiet! The baby _____ in the next room.
—OK. Sorry.
A. sleep B. slept C. sleeps D. is sleeping
8. — Can I join your club, Dad?
—You can when you _____ a bit older.
A. get B. will get C. are getting D. will have got
9. —How many times have you been to the Great Wall?
—Only once. I _____ there last year.
A. went B. have gone C. have been D. go
10. —Is this the place that you _____?
—No. I have never been there before.
A. have visited B. will visit C. are visiting D. had visited
11. He isn't here. He _____ to the library.
A. has been B. has gone C. will D. go
12. Henry told the teacher that he _____ his exercise book on time.
A. hand in B. has handed in C. will hand in D. would hand in
13. They _____ a basketball match tomorrow afternoon.

A. play　　B. are going to play　　C. played　　D. will be going to play

14. When I got to the station, the bus _____ already _____.

A. was, left　　B. is, leaving　　C. has, left　　D. had, left

15. —How long _____ each other before they got married?

—For about two years.

A. have they known　　B. had they known

C. did they know　　D. do they know

16. Long ago, people didn't know the earth _____ around the sun.

A. moves　　B. move　　C. moved　　D. has moved

17. I _____ in the street when someone called me.

A. was walking　　B. am walking　　C. walked　　D. have walked

18. He wanted to know if there _____ an English test tomorrow.

A. is　　B. was　　C. will be　　D. would be

19. —Does Sean _____ English every day?

—Yes, he _____. But sometimes he _____ Chinese with us at school.

A. speak; do; speak　　B. speaks; does; speaks

C. speaks; does; speak　　D. speak; does; speaks

20. —What were you doing at eight last night?

—I _____ with my father this time last night.

A. am playing chess　　B. was playing chess

C. am playing the chess　　D. was playing the chess

10．动词的被动语态

语态是动词的一种形式，表示主语和谓语之间的具体关系，分为主动语态和被动语态两种。主动语态表示主语是谓语动词所表示的动作的执行者，被动语态表示主语是谓语动词所表示的动作的承受者。

（1）被动语态的构成。

被动语态由助动词 be+动词过去分词构成。助动词 be 有人称和时态的变化。下面以 do 为例介绍考试说明中要求掌握的三种时态的被动语态和含有情态动词的句子的被动语态的构成形式。

一般现在时　am/ is/ are + done

一般过去时　was/ were + done

一般将来时　will / shall be + done

现在进行时　am/is /are +being+ done

现在完成时　have/ has +been + done

情态动词的被动语态　can/may/must/need + be + done

（2）被动语态的用法。

A．英语中，当不知谁是动作的执行者，或由于某种原因没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时，通常用被动语态。

例如：My bike has been stolen.

Paper was first made in China.

B．强调动作的承受者。

例如：The girl is liked by everybody.

The bridge will be built next year.

The exercises must be done in class.



跟踪训练

1. —Who is the little baby in the photo, Susan?
—It's me. This photo _____ ten years ago.
A. takes B. is taken C. took D. was taken

2. The old version _____ if you don't need it any more.
A. can be removed B. can remove
C. can be removing D. must remove

3. Computer _____ in everyday life in this country.
A. is used B. will use C. will be use D. was used

4. It is reported that the Underground Line No.3 _____ in our city next year.
A. will build B. has built C. will be built D. has been built

5. When the work _____ , you may go home.
A. is done B. done C. is to be done D. will done

6. Kate _____ take part in a party.
A. was invited B. was invited to C. invite to D. invited to

7. These songs _____ often _____ by children.
A. are; singing B. is; singing C. are; sung D. is; sung

8. He was _____ stand up in front of the whole class.
A. made B. made to C. making D. to make

9. The telephone _____ by Bell in 1876.
A. is invented B. was invented C. invented D. invent

10. His new book _____ next month.
A. will be published B. is published
C. has being published D. has been published

11. We can't get through because the road _____ now.
A. is being repaired B. was being repaired
C. is repaired D. was repaired

12. He _____ in the next room.
A. is often heard to sing B. often heard to sing
C. is often heard sing D. often hears to sing

13. English _____ by us for 3 years in the vocational school.
A. have been studied　　B. has been studied
C. have studied　　D. has studied

14. The computer should _____. It doesn't work now.
A. repair　　B. be repaired
C. repaired　　D. be repairing

15. —Have you moved into the new office?
—Not yet, the office _____.
A. is decorating　　B. is decorated
C. is being decorating　　D. is being decorated

16. The sports meeting _____ because of the bad weather.
A. put off　　B. was put off　　C. was putted off　　D. has put off

17. A lot of tall buildings _____ in his hometown in the last three years.
A. have set up　　B. set up　　C. have been set up　　D. were set up

18. I could not get even one ticket since all the seats _____.
A. booked up　　B. were booked up
C. are booked up　　D. will be booked up

19. More trees _____ next year to make the city greener.
A. are planted　　B. will plant
C. will be planted　　D. would be planted

20. The camera _____ for two weeks.
A. may be kept　　B. may be borrowed
C. must keep　　D. should borrow

11. 非谓语动词

非谓语动词指不能单独做谓语，但同时能保留动词某些特征的动词形式，非谓语动词有动词不定式、动词+ing 和动词+ed 三种形式。

（1）动词不定式。

动词不定式的基本形式是“to+动词原形”，但有时可以不带 to，否定形式为“not+不定式”，不定式没有人称和数的变化，在句中不能作谓语，但是可以作主语、宾语、宾语补足语、表语、定语、状语等。

① 作主语。

在很多情况下，常可以用代词 it 来代替它作形式主语，而把动词不定式移到句子后部去，以避免头重脚轻；如果需要说明动词不定式表示的动作是谁做的，可以在动词不定式前加一个由 for 引起的短语；在由某些形容词(例如 kind，good，nice，wise，unwise，clever，wrong，right，foolish，stupid，careless，polite，rude 等)作表语时，不定式前常加一个 of 引起的短语，以说明不定式指的是谁的情况。

例如：To become a teacher is his wish.

It's useful to know how to drive.

It's very kind of you to say so.

It's necessary for us to solve this problem.

② 作表语。

例如：His wish is to become a teacher.

Her job is to look after the patients.

③ 作宾语。

动词不定式作宾语很常见，能以动词不定式作宾语的动词很多，常见的有：want，wish，hope，manage，ask，offer, promise，decide，learn，agree，expect, plan 等。

例如：She decided to stay at home last night.

My brother expects to find a job soon.

④ 作宾语补足语。

A. 在动词 tell，ask，want，know，like，hate，allow，permit，force，invite，get，expect，order 等后面可以用动词不定式作宾语补足语。

例如：We invite Sue to have dinner with us.

He asked you not to be late.

B. 在动词 hear，see，notice，feel，watch，listen to，look at，make，let，have 等后作宾语补足语时，动词不定式不带 to。当这些动词在被动句中做谓语时，后面的动词不定式符号 "to" 就不能省略。

例如：Did you see somebody break the window?

We watched the plane take off.

He was seen to fall.

The students are made to work hard.

C. help 后面的动词不定式可以带 to, 也可以不带 to。

例如：He helped his brother to tidy the house.

I will help you finish this task.

⑤ 作定语。

动词不定式作定语时，位置必须放在被它修饰的名词或代词后面。

例如：I have got some letters to write.

He was the first man to leave the building.

⑥ 作状语。

A．作目的状语，常与 in order to, so as to 连用，否定式为 in order not to, so as not to，so as to 不用于句首。

例如：I'm going out to do some shopping.

I went to America in order to learn English.

B．作结果状语，常与 too…to…，enough…to…等连用。

例如：It's not dark enough to see the stars clearly.

The teacher was too impatient to listen to anyone.

C．作原因状语

例如：The girl jumped with joy to hear the news.

I'm very pleased to see you.

⑦ 疑问词＋不定式结构。不定式可以和疑问代词 what，which 或疑问副词 when，how，why，where 等连用，构成不定式短语，在句中作主语、宾语和表语等成分。

例如：What to do now is still a problem.（作主语）

I really don't know where to go.（作宾语）

The question is which one to choose.（作表语）

（2）动词+ing 形式可以在句子中作主语、表语、宾语、定语、宾语补足语、状语。

① 动词+ing 形式作主语。

A．动词+ing 形式作主语放在句首。

例如：Typing is my favorite job.

Reading in bed is bad for your eyes.

B．动词+ing 形式作主语时,通常用 it 作形式主语。

例如：It's no use crying over the spilt milk.

It will be nice seeing you again.

② 动词+ing 形式作表语。

例如：I think cooking is interesting.

My favorite sport is playing football.

③ 动词+ing 形式作宾语。

A． 动词+ing 形式（短语）用作动词的宾语，例如 practice, suggest, finish, can't help, mind, enjoy, consider, keep, go on 等动词都可以用动名词作宾语（不能用不定式），在 love, like, need, hate, prefer, begin, start 等动词后，可以用动词+ing 形式作宾语，也可以用不定式作宾语。在形容词 worth, busy 等词的后面，也需要用动词+ing 形式作宾语。

例如：I enjoy getting up early in the morning.

Would you mind passing me the bread?

This book is worth reading.

注意

1. stop to do something 和 stop doing something 有区别，stop to do something 表示停下来开始做某事，stop doing something 表示停止做某事。

例如：I've stopped smoking.

He stopped to look at the blackboard.

2. forget/remember/regret 后可以用动词不定式作宾语，也可以用动名词作宾语，意思不同。

例如：I remember taking the medicine at the right time. 我记得已按时服过药了。

I remember to take the medicine at the right time. 我记住要按时服药。

B. 动词+ing 形式作介词的宾语，它常在 insist on, think of, hear of, stop...from, look

forward to, depend on, thank...for, devote...to, spend...in, be used to, be fond of, be afraid of, be tired of, be interested in, be proud of 等词组后边作介词宾语，也可以和 about，against，at，before，after，since，by，for，from，in，on，upon，without 等介词构成短语作状语用。

例如：I am thinking of buying a new car.

Carlos isn't used to eating English food.

Since leaving school he has worked hard.

④ 动词+ing 形式作定语。

A. 动词+ing 形式作定语经常放在名词之前，如果被修饰的词是 something，anything，everything，nothing 等，放在这些词之后。

例如：This was a worrying problem.

We are having a relaxing holiday.

Is there anything exciting for tonight?

He is studying in the reading room.

B. 动词+ing 短语通常放在被修饰的名词之后，起定语从句的作用。

例如：The man sitting by the window is our English teacher.

He received an envelope containing his credit card.

⑤ 动词+ing 形式作宾语补语。

在 hear，see，notice，feel，watch，listen to，keep，find，have 等动词后+宾语+现在分词作宾语补语，表示宾语正在做某事。

例如：He heard someone knocking at the door.（他听到有人敲门。）

I am sorry to have kept you waiting.（对不起，让你们等着）

⑥ 动词+ing 形式作状语，表示时间、原因、方式、结果、条件和伴随情况等，动词+ ing 作状语，起状语从句的作用，它的逻辑的主语应与句子的主语一致。

A. 时间状语。

例如：I hurt my leg playing basketball.

I had an accident driving to work.

B. 原因状语。

例如：He was quite disappointed, thinking that he would never have his things back.

Knowing you wanted to go to the concert, I bought a ticket for you.

C. 方式或伴随状语。

例如：I walked out of the room smiling to myself.

D. 结果状语。

例如：The child fell, striking his head against the door and cutting it.

E. 条件状语。

例如：If playing all day, you will waste your valuable time.

（3）动词的过去分词。

动词的过去分词可以在句中作宾语补足语、状语、表语、定语。

① 动词过去分词作宾语补足语，宾语与过去分词为被动关系，表示被动意义或完

成意义。

例如：We found the river polluted.

We wished the problem settled at once.

过去分词在 get，have 等词后面作宾语补足语，表示请别人做某事。

例如：They are having the room painted now.

Why don't you get your car washed?

② 动词过去分词作状语。

例如：Educated in the United States, she speaks English quite well.

The teacher went to the classroom, followed by some visitors.

③ 动词过去分词作表语。

例如：I was very disappointed to hear that you didn't pass the exam.

Everyone was excited.

④ 动词过去分词作定语。

例如：This is the book written by an American.

The school called "Hope" is the best in the city.



跟踪训练

1. We're going out for dinner. Would you like _____ us?

A. to join　　B. joined　　C. join　　D. joining

2. —I'm really _____ about your health, David.

—Don't worry, Mom. I'll be better soon.

A. worry　　B. worried　　C. worries　　D. worrying

3. Bill didn't understand _____ the difficult maths problem.

A. how work out　　B. how worked out

C. how to work out　　D. to work out

4. —The boys of Class Two are going to the seaside this weekend.

—Um, remember _____ them _____ in the sea alone. It's dangerous.

A. to tell; not to swim　　B. telling; swimming

C. to tell; swimming　　D. telling; to not swim

5. —Mary was heard _____ just now. What happened?

—John was telling a joke.

A. cry　　B. to cry　　C. laugh　　D. to laugh

6. —Jane, I'm very thirsty.

—Let's go to the nearest supermarket _____ some drink, OK?

A. to buy　　B. buy　　C. buying　　D. bought

7. Do you want _____ these shoes to see if they're the right size?

A. trying on　　B. to try on

C. try on D. tries on

8. —Do you get someone _____ your clothes?
—Yes, I often have them _____.
A. wash; washed B. to wash; washed
C. washing; wash D. to wash; wash

9. —There is a _____ cup on the plate. Who did it?
—Sorry, I did.
A. broken B. to break
C. breaking D. broke

10. —Good morning, can I help you?
—I'd like to have this package _____, madam.
A. be weighed B. to be weighed C. to weigh D. weighed

11. The girl seemed very interested in watching me _____ the experiment.
A. to do B. do C. in doing D. for doing

12. We missed _____ the film when it was shown last week.
A. seeing B. to see C. that we saw D. having been seen

13. —Have to read the books _____ by Moyan?
—Yes. I learned a lot from his books.
A. to write B. being written C. writing D. written

14. He felt so _____ to see such a _____ film.
A. boring, bored B. bored, boring C. bored, bored D. boring, boring

15. It's important _____ English well.
A. of us to study B. for us to study
C. of us studying D. for us studying

16. My favorite TV program is *Readers*. I think we should spend as much time as we can _____ in our spare time.
A. read B. reading C. to read D. to be reading

17. —Nowadays lots of products from China are very popular in the world.
—Yeah! Many people can hardly avoid _____ products made in China.
A. to buy B. bought C. buy D. buying

18. You are not _____ care of the baby.
A. careful enough taking B. careful enough to take
C. enough careful taking D. enough careful to take

19. What I would suggest is _____ the job right away.
A. to start B. starts C. of staring D. for staring

20. I prefer _____ water rather than drink tea.
A. drink B. drinking C. to drink D. drank

12．情态动词

情态动词主要用以说明说话者对某一行为的态度和观点，主要包括能力、判断、需要、可能、各种意愿等。

（1）can, could。

① 表示能力（could 表示过去的能力）。

例如：I can speak two languages.

He could swim when he was five years old.

② 表示可能性（could 表示的可能性比较小）。

例如：Anyone can make mistakes.

He could be in the living room.

③ 表示请求、允许（这时可以与 may 通用，但是 may 较为正式，could 较为婉转），否定回答用 can't, mustn't。

例如：Can / May I borrow your bike?

Could I use your telephone?

Could you pass me that newspaper, please?

④ 表示推测、怀疑，用于疑问句、否定句和感叹句中。

例如：Can this be true?

He can't be in the reading room.

How can you be so careless!

（2）may , might。

① 表示可能性（might 的可能性一般比 may 要小些）。

例如：She may be in the classroom.

We might go to the beach.

注意

A．may 表示可能，不用于疑问句首，此时用 can

例如：Can the story be true?

B．表示可能性时，can't 语气很肯定；may not 语气不肯定

例如：It can't be him. He has gone abroad.（那不可能是他，他出国了）

It may not be him, but I'm not quite sure.（那或许不是他，但我不十分肯定）

② 表示请求、允许（这时可以和 can, could 通用，但是 may 更为正式），否定回答用 can't, mustn't。

例如：—May I keep the book for a week?

—No, you can't (mustn't).

He asked me if he might make a suggestion.

③ "May + 主语 + 动词原形" 表示祝愿。

例如：May all your dreams come true.

May you be happy!

（3）shall。

① shall 用于第一人称，第三人称疑问句首，征求对方的意愿。

例如：Shall we sing a song?

Shall I open the door for you?

Shall she go now?

② shall 用于第二、三人称陈述句中，表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺等。

例如：You shall fall if you don't work hard. (警告)

All of you shall arrive before five o'clock. (命令)

（4）should 表示义务、劝告、推测，意为“应该”。

例如：We should study hard.

We should not read in the sun.

He should be around sixty years old.

（5）will, would。

① 表示请求（would 比 will 更婉转），主要用于第二人称疑问句中。

例如：Will you turn on the light, please?

Would you post this letter for me?

② 表示意愿。

例如：She said she would take care of the child.

I would like a cup of coffee, please.

③ 表示提供帮助或邀请。

例如：What will you have for breakfast?

Would you like me to help you?

（6）must, have to。

must 和 have to 都表示必须、一定的意思，有时它们可以互换。must 表示主观需要，have to 表示客观上的必要，must 的否定式 mustn't 表示“禁止”； needn't 或 don't have to 表示“不必”。

例如：I must (have to) phone my friend tonight.

You must (have to) have a passport to visit the United States.

You mustn't play my camera.

① must 通常表示主观上的必须和说话者的个人意志与权威性。

have to 通常表示客观上的必要，有“不得不”、“只得”的意思。

例如：I must lose some weight.

You have to sign the check on the back.

② must 表示肯定的推测，表示“必定，一定”。

例如：The light is still on, so he must be at home.

（7）need。

① need 作情态动词时，只用于疑问句和否定句中，need 无形态变化。

例如：—Need I come?

—Yes, you must. (No, you needn't.)

You needn't put on your sweater.

② need 用于实义动词时，后面常跟动词不定式、V-ing、名词等，有人称、数和时态变化。

例如：You need to clean your room.

She needs a good rest.

The bicycle needs repairing.



跟踪训练

1. —Ann, _____ you say this word in English?
 —Yes. It's easy.
 A. may　　B. can　　C. must　　D. need
2. —Look! It _____ be the new woman manager.
 —It _____ be her. She has just left for Shanghai.
 A. can; mustn't　　B. must; can't　　C. must; mustn't　　D. can't; must
3. —Must I go now?
 —No, you _____.
 A. must　　B. mustn't　　C. needn't　　D. not have to
4. —Who's that boy reading in the garden? Is it David?
 —It _____ be David. He has gone to Shanghai with his grandparents.
 A. can't　　B. may not　　C. mustn't　　D. will not
5. —Could you tell me more about your problem?
 —I _____ talk about it any more.
 A. mustn't　　B. had better
 C. would rather not　　D. would rather
6. — Could I borrow your dictionary?
 — Yes, of course you _____ .
 A. might　　B. will　　C. can　　D. could
7. —Excuse me. How can I get to the railway station?
 —Turn left and then follow your nose. You _____ miss it.
 A. haven't　　B. can't　　C. mustn't　　D. needn't
8. —_____we go out for a walk?
 —Good idea. What time shall we meet?
 A. Shall　　B. Can　　C. Would　　D. Will
9. I missed the last bus, so I _____ go home on foot.
 A. must　　B. have to　　C. may　　D. had to
10. —Would you like to join us for lunch?

—Sorry, _____. My brother is coming to see me.

A. I mustn't B. I can't C. I needn't D. I will

11. We _____ be careful when we are walking across the road. There are too many vehicles.

A. must B. may C. can D. could

12. — _____ I smoke here?

—No, you _____. This is no-smoking area.

A. May, needn't B. May, mustn't C. Must, couldn't D. Could, wouldn't

13. You _____ to the meeting this afternoon if you have something important to do.

A. needn't to come B. don't need come

C. don't need coming D. needn't come

14. When I was a child, I _____ watch TV whenever I wanted to.

A. may B. could C. can D. might

15. — _____ you do me a favor?

—Sure. With pleasure.

A. Must B. Need C. Should D. Could

16. —What's wrong with your bike?

—My bike doesn't work and _____ repairing.

A. need B. needs C. must D. may

17. —Need we clean the dance room every day?

—Yes, you _____.

A. may B. can C. must D. should

18. Let us help you finish the task, _____?

A. do you B. shall we C. will you D. won't you

19. — What should we do to protect the fish in the river?

— We _____ throw rubbish into the river.

A. mustn't B. need C. must D. needn't

20. Excuse me._____ you please pass me the book?

A. Must B. Might C. Would D. Should

13. 简单句和并列句

构成篇章的基本单位是句子，每个句子是由词或短语构成，这些词或短语就是句子成分。不同的内容需要不同的句式结构，这些句式结构又构成英语中不同的句子类型。

（1）简单句的六种基本句型。

简单句的基本句型主要包括：主—系—表、主—谓—（状）、主—谓—宾、主—谓—间宾—直宾、主—谓—宾—宾补、There be 结构的基本句子结构。

例如：He is a teacher.

We study hard.

He thought over the plan all the night.

I gave him some money.

We think the job easy.

There is going to be a party in the meeting room tonight.

（2）简单句的种类。

A. 陈述句。

陈述句说明一个事实或者陈述说话人的看法。

例如：She arrived late.

He is not fat.

B. 疑问句。

疑问句提出问题，句末用问号。疑问句通常分为：一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反意疑问句。

例如：Can you speak English?

Who is the tallest in your class?

Are you a teacher or a student?

Beijing is a beautiful city, isn’t it?

C. 祈使句。

祈使句表示请求、命令、叮嘱、号召等，谓语动词用原形，其否定式在动词前加上 Don’t。

例如：Come in, everybody!

Don’t let them make any noise.

Let’s not waste time.

Please read the text.

D. 感叹句。

感叹句表示喜怒哀乐等情绪，多用 what 和 how 引起：what 用来修饰名词，how 用来修饰形容词、副词或动词。

例如：What good news it is!

What a beautiful park it is!

How beautiful the park is!

How well she dances!

（3）并列句。

如果句子包含有两个或更多互不依从的主谓结构，就是并列句，并列句中的分句通常是用一个并列连词来连接。常用的并列连词有：and, but, or, so, for, while, however, not only…but also, either…or, neither…nor 等。

例如：He made a promise, but he didn’t keep it.

He’s tall while she is short.

Either come in or go out.

跟踪训练

1. —Mr. Johnson isn't a teacher, is he?
—_____. He's taught in our school for 5 years.
A. No, he is B. No, he isn't C. Yes, he is D. Yes, he isn't
2. Harry comes late sometimes，_____?
A. is he B. isn't he C. does he D. doesn't he
3. _____ a lovely day it is!
A. How B. What C. How it is D. What it is
4. Let's meet at the station, _____?
A. will you B. won't you C. shall we D. shall not we
5. _____ the windows before leaving.
A. Shutting B. Shut C. To shut D. Shuts
6. _____ is the price of the pair of the shoes?
A. How much B. How many C. What D. How
7. _____ do you like better, this one or that one?
A. What B. Which C. How D. Where
8. —Would you like to come to dinner tonight?
—I'd like to, _____ I'm too busy.
A. and B. so C. as D. but
9. —_____ is your favorite football star?
—Ronaldo.
A. Who B. How C. When D. What
10. —_____ is he?
—He is well.
A. How B. What C. What an D. How an
11. There _____ a class meeting tomorrow morning.
A. will have B. is going to have C. have D. will be
12. —_____late again, Li Ming.
—Sorry, sir. I won't.
A. Not be B. Don't be C. Not to be D. Don't to be
13. Albert! It's time for you to go to bed, _____ you will feel tired tomorrow.
A .but B. and C. or D. so
14. Smile to the world, _____ the world will smile back to you.
A. nor B. but C. or D. and
15. If you have a job, _____ yourself to it and finally you'll succeed.
A. do devote B. don't devote C. devoting D. not devoting

16. —_____ interesting the film is!

—Yeah. We are all interested in it.

A. How　　B. What　　C. What a　　D. What an

17. —You can't imagine _____ great fun chatting online is!

—Really? But it may cause you a lot of trouble.

A. How a　　B. What a　　C. What　　D. How

18. Not only my mother but also I _____ fond of collecting stamps.

A. is　　B. am　　C. are　　D. were

19. Li Hong _____ English.

A. does like　　B. do likes　　C. does likes　　D. do like

20. We are thirsty. I would like a bottle of orange, _____ my brother would like some cool water.

A. when　　B. until　　C. since　　D. while

14．主从复合句

主从复合句是指由两个或两个以上的分句构成，而且其他分句从属于一个主要分句的句子。

（1）状语从句。

① 时间状语从句。

由 when，while, as soon as，once，until，till，as，before，after，since 等引导。

when“当…的时候”指某个具体的时间，表示一件事紧跟另一件事发生；

while“当…的时候”强调主句中的动作与从句中的动作在某一段时间内同时发生，while 从句必须用延续性动词；

as soon as 表示“一…就”的意思；once 表示“一旦…就”的意思；

until 和 till 意为“直到…为止”，until 多用于句首，till 主要用于口语中；

在时间状语从句中，如果主句表达的意思是将来时态，从句需要用一般现在时态表达将来时态。

例如：When he returned, his wife was cooking.

While you are listening to the teacher, try to answer his questions.

The boy didn't see the car until it was very late.

Tom waited till his mother finished her work.

He will phone you as soon as he has a good idea.

Once my daughter reaches the age of sixteen, she will be able to drive.

② 条件状语从句。

由 if，unless，as long as 引导。

if 表示“如果”，unless 表示“除非”，as long as 表示“只要”，在条件状语从句中，如果主句表达的意思是将来时态，从句需要用一般现在时态表达将来时态。

例如：If you are not a romantic, you won't want to see a love story.

You will fail in the exam unless you study hard.

As long as I am here, I will help you.

③ 原因状语从句。

由 because 引导，表示主句动作的原因。

例如：I like my work very much because my job is very interesting.

④ 方式状语从句。

由 as 引导，表示主句动作的方式。

例如：I did as my parents asked.

⑤ 目的状语从句。

由 so that，in order that 引导。so that，in order that 表示“为了…”,“以便”的意思，通常与 can，can't，will，won't 等连用。

例如：He often does morning exercises so that(in order that) he can keep clear in his mind.

I lent him $30 in order that (so that) he might go for a holiday.

⑥ 结果状语从句。

由 so...that, such...that 引导，so 后主要跟形容词或副词，so...that 表示“如此…以至于”；such 后跟名词，such...that 表示“这样的(一个)…以致于”。

例如：I was so tired that I couldn't finish the work.

It was such lovely weather that we spent the whole day in the park.

⑦ 比较状语从句。

由 as...as, not so(as)...as，than 等引导。

as...as 表示“像…一样”，not so(as)...as 表示“不像…一样”，than 表示比较。

例如：This work is not so easy as you think.

He is three years older than I (am).

Mary doesn't work as hard as I do.

⑧ 地点状语从句。

例如：Where there is a will, there is a way.

You have the right to live where you want.

⑨ 让步状语从句。

由 though，although，even though，even if 等引导。though 和 although 都表示“虽然”, although 比 though 更为正式，二者都可与 yet, still 连用，但不能和 but 连用。even though 和 even if 表示“即使”。

例如：Although he worked hard, yet he failed.

Air has weight, though it is light.

I couldn't sleep even though I was tired.

跟踪训练

1. —_____ you have a long holiday, where do you want to go?
—I'll climb Mount Tai alone _____ my parents stop me.
A. Unless; if　B. If; unless　C. As long as; if　D. When; If

2. —There will be a baseball match this Sunday. Would you like to go with me?
—_____ I have time, I will go with you.
A. Before　B. If　C. After　D. Because

3. She doesn't work _____ I do.
A. so hard as　B. as harder as
C. so harder as　D. as the hardest as

4. —Hurry up. The bus is coming.
—Wait a minute. Don't cross the street _____ the traffic lights are green.
A. after　B. unless　C. while　D. since

5. _____ he finished his homework, he went out to play.
A. As well as　B. As long as　C. As far as　D. As soon as

6. —Where is the comic book?
—I brought it to you _____ you were in the reading room yesterday.
A. when　B. if　C. because　D. before

7. —Mary, turn off the water _____ you are brushing your teeth.
—Sorry, I'll do it at once.
A. until　B. while　C. during　D. unless

8. We have been good friends _____ we joined the same ping-pong team.
A. after　B. before　C. since　D. until

9. —How is the weather tomorrow?
—I don't know if it _____ tomorrow.
—Well, if it _____, I won't go with you.
A. will rain; will rain　B. rains; rains
C. rains; will rain　D. will rain; rains

10. When your favorite player kicks the football into the goal, you feel_____ you were on top of the world.
A. as soon as　B. as if　C. so that　D. if

11. — Is Johnson at school today?
— No. He is at home _____ he has a bad cold.
A. if　B. because　C. until　D. before

12. _____ you have dreams, something nice will happen.
A. Even though　B. As soon as　C. As long as　D. As though

13. He ran very fast _____ he could catch up with others.

A. in order to B. such that C. so as to D. in order that

14. Director Zhang had _____ many children that they formed their own basketball team.

A. so B. such C. such a D. so a

15. — It's time to go to bed, Li Ming.

— Mum, I have a lot of homework to do, I won't go to bed _____ I finish it.

A. as soon as B. since C. until D. after

16. I always did _____ my teacher asked.

A. as if B. as C. like D. so

17. — The job seems very difficult.

— _____ it will take me a long time, I decide to finish it.

A. As if B. If C. Unless D. Even though

18. You should put the dictionary _____ you can find it easily.

A. where B. the place C. on which D. what

19. _____ you have made decisions, you should stick to it.

A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once

20. _____ the girl is only ten, she takes care of her brother and cooks meals every day.

A. If B. As C. Because D. Although

（2）定语从句。

① 关系代词 who, whom, whose。

A．who, whom 用于人，who 在定语从句中作主语或宾语，whom 在定语从句中作宾语，作宾语时 who 或 whom 可以省略。

例如：This is the doctor who saved the boy's life.

The man (who/whom) Wang Tao wrote to on the internet is the personnel manager.

B．whose 主要用于人或物，在定语从句中作定语。

例如：I know a girl whose father is a doctor.

This is a house whose windows face the sea.

② 关系代词 that，which。

A．关系代词 that 可以代替 who 指人，可以代替 which 指事物或物，在定语从句中一般可以作主语或宾语，作宾语时可以省略。

例如：He is the man that telephoned me last night.

This is the place (that) we visited.

B．关系代词 which 用于事或物，可以在定语从句中作主语或宾语，作宾语时可以省略。

例如：This is an old computer which/that works much slower.

This is the building (which/that) we built.

注意

下列情况只能用 that 不能用 which：

1. 如果先行词是 all, little, everything, something, anything, nothing, much, few, none 等不定代词只能用 that。

2. 当先行词被形容词最高级、序数词或 only, any, few, little, no, all, one of 等词时修饰时，关系代词只能用 that。

3. 先行词中既有人又有物时，关系代词只能用 that。

This is the most interesting book that we can buy.

We have done all that should be done.

There is nothing that we can do now.

They are the writer and the book that I like.

4. 当主句是以 who, which 开头的疑问句中，关系代词只能用 that。

Which is the book that he bought from the bookstore yesterday?

Who is the girl that you met yesterday?

③ 关系副词 when, where, why。

A. 关系副词 when 在定语从句中作时间状语，主要修饰表示时间的名词。

例如：Is there a time when we can meet?

I will never forget the day when we met together.

B. 关系副词 where 在定语从句中作地点状语，主要修饰表示地点的名词。

例如：The factory where I work is near my house.

This is the study where Lu Xun used to live.

C. 关系副词 why 在定语从句中作原因状语，主要修饰名词 reason。

例如：I want to know the reason why he was late for class yesterday.

Is there a reason why you want to leave now?

This is the reason why he was late.

D. 介词＋which 可以代替 where, when。

例如：That's the city in which (where) he was born.

The hotel at which (where) we stayed was very small.

That day on which (when) I met Deng Xiaoping was the greatest day of my life.

跟踪训练

1. —Barbara, where do you work?

—I work for a company _____ sells cars.

A. which　　B. what　　C. where　　D. who

2. She is the student _____ English is the best in my class.

A. who　　B. whom　　C. whose　　D. which

3. The reason _____ he got a bad cold is that he was caught in a heavy rain.

A. when B. why C. which D. where

4. —What skills does a mechanic have?

—A mechanic is a person _____ fixes buses and trucks.

A. when B. who C. which D. why

5. Have you met the girl about _____he was speaking?

A. / B. whom C. that D. who

6. About 97% of the water on the earth is sea water _____ we can't drink or use to water plants directly.

A. that B. where C. in which D. the one

7. The train _____ she was traveling was late.

A. which B. when C. where D. in that

8. October 1, 1949 is the day _____ the People's Republic of China was founded.

A. which B. when C. in which D. on that

9. —Do you know the place "Wolong" _____ the pandas "Tuan Tuan" and "YuanYuan" was born?

—Yes, I know.

A. which B. that C. whose D. where

10. Do you know the street _____ Mr. Smith once lived?

A. which B. that C. in that D. in which

11. We live in a building _____ windows are brown.

A. that B. whose C. which D. who

12. Do you know the man _____?

A. whom I spoke B. to who spoke C. I spoke to D. that I spoke

13. Tony will never forget these days _____ she lived in China with her mother, which has a great effect on her life.

A. that B. when C. which D. where

14. Pass me the book _____ cover is red.

A. which B. whose C. what D. that

15. —Do you have anything _____ you want to say for yourself?

—No, that's all.

A. that B. who C. which D. what

16. — Why do you like the story so much?

—Because it is the best film _____ I have ever seen.

A. that B. which C. whose D. whom

17. The place _____ interested me most was workshop in my school.

A. where B. in which C. what D. which

18. They talked for about an hour of things and persons _____ they remembered in the school.

A .which B. that C. who D. whom

19. —What do you think of the hotel _____?
—It's comfortable.
A. where you stayed　　B. which you stayed
C. at that you stayed　　D. where you stayed at

20. — Can I have a look at the book _____ you bought yesterday?
— Of course you can. Here you are.
A. what　　B. who　　C. /　　D. where

（3）名词性从句。

① 由 that 引导的从句。

A．that 引导的主语从句(that 从句位于句首时，that 不可以省略)。

例如：That you are coming to China is good news to us.

It is natural (that) they should have different ways to settle the problem.

B．that 引导表语从句。

例如：The fact is (that) he doesn't try hard.

My idea is (that) we should work hard.

C．that 引导宾语从句。

例如：We all know (that) the sun moves the earth.

Many people say (that) they have seen the old man.

② 由 if, whether 引导的从句。

A．whether 可以引导主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和介词的宾语从句。

例如：Whether he comes to Beijing is not clear to me.（主语从句）

I asked my parents whether I could go swimming.（宾语从句）

The question is whether we can go there on time.（表语从句）

It all depends on whether they will support us.（介词的宾语从句）

B．if 可以引导宾语从句，也可以引导主语从句，但只能后置，不能居于句首。

例如：It is not clear to me if we would have a meeting.

He asked if the train stopped at New York.

注意

whether 后面可以跟 or not ,而 if 则不可以。

③ 由连接代词和连接副词引导的从句。

由连接代词和连接副词引导的从句，连接词主要有 who，whom，whose，which，what，where，when，how，why 等，连接词在从句中充当一个成分。

A．主语从句。

例如：Who did the work is unknown.

Who will go to countryside has not been discussed.

B．宾语从句。

例如：I know what you are thinking.

You must tell me which I should choose.

They are talking about what they should do next.

C．表语从句。

例如：That was why he was late yesterday.

The problem is where they can live.

注意

1．whether 能引导所有名词性从句，whether 能与 or (not) 连用；if 只能引导主语和宾语从句，但不能作介词的宾语，不能与 or (not) 连用，引导主语从句时不能放在句首。

I don't know whether I should take his advice or not. (不能用 if)

The question is whether I can learn Chinese well. (不能用 if)

2．What 引导名词性从句时，可有两种意义：

（1）保持原有的疑问意义：

I don't know what he wants.

（2）表示“…东西”,“…事情”：

That's what he wants.

3．what 和 that 不可混用，what 相当于 all that.

I don't know what I should do.

I know all that I should do.

跟踪训练

1. Do you remember where _____ my watch?

A. did I put　　B. had put I　　C. I put　　D. have I put

2. —Do you remember _____ he came?

—Yes, I do. He came by car.

A. how　　B. when　　C. that　　D. where

3. This is _____ looking for.

A. what were you　　B. you were

C. what you were　　D. that you were

4. Could you tell me _____?

A. where are you from　　B. where do you come from

C. where you are from　　D. where you to be from

5. Have you decided _____?

A. which one will you choose　　B. which one you will choose

C. which one you to choose　　D. to choose which one

6. —What did you say to your mother just now?
—I asked her _____ she cooked for dinner.
A. that　　B. if　　C. how　　D. what

7. —Did Mr. White tell you _____?
—Yes. He said he went there in 2003.
A. when he traveled to Wuhan　　B. when he goes to Wuhan
C. where he spent his holidays　　D. why did he visit Kunming

8. It is reported _____ some sea animals are no bigger than your smallest fingernail.
A. what　　B. like　　C. as　　D. that

9. The question is _____.
A. what should we do first　　B. that should we do first
C. what we should do first　　D. why should we do first

10. —Alice, Rita called you just now when you were out.
—Did she say when _____ me again, Dad?
A. she will call　　B. would she call
C. she would call　　D. will she call

11. He didn't tell us_____.
A. if he will give us a lecture　　B. whether he would go with you
C. when he has studied　　D. when he will arrive

12. I don't know _____ he'll come or not.
A. whether　　B. if　　C. that　　D. what

13. Could you tell me _____ the post office?
A. how can I get to　B. how I can get to　C. where can I get to D. where I to get

14. — Excuse me, could you tell me_____?
— There's an e-shop on the third floor. You can make it there.
A. where can I have my Mp4 repaired　　B. where I can have my Mp4 repaired
C. how can I go to the e-shop.　　D. if there was an e-shop nearby.

15. — Do you know _____ he didn't come?
— He hurt his leg.
A. when　　B. what　　C. why　　D. where

16. — Someone is knocking at the door, Dad?
— Go and see _____.
A. who is it　　B. who it is　　C. who is he　　D. who he is

17. Could you tell me _____ she is looking for?
A. that　　B. whose　　C. whom　　D. which

18. _____ you like him is none of my business.
A. What　　B. Who　　C. That　　D. Whether

19. My idea is _____ we should work hard.
A. that　　B. what　　C. when　　D. why

20. We don't know when he _____. He will call us when he _____.

A. will come; will come　　B. comes; comes

C. will come; comes　　D. comes; will come

三、日常交际用语

要求掌握日常生活、学习、工作、休闲娱乐等交际场合的简单对话用语。

1．问候与应答（Greeting and responding）

First speaker	Second speaker
Good morning./Good afternoon./Good evening.	Good morning./Good afternoon./Good evening.
Hello./Hi.	Hello. /Hi.
Glad/Nice/Pleased to meet/see you.	Glad/Nice/Pleased to meet/see you.
How do you do?	How do you do?
How are you? /How are you doing?	I'm fine. /Fine. Thank you.
How is everything? /How are things?/How is it going?	So-so. /Very well./Not bad. Thank you.
What's up? /What's good news?	Nothing much./Nothing special.

2．引荐与介绍（Introducing oneself and others）

Let me introduce myself./ May I introduce myself? My name is Zhao Gang. I'm from Shandong.
Let me introduce Mr. Black. /May I introduce Mr. Black? He is our new English teacher.
Let me introduce you./This is Zhang Li. She is my friend. And this is Miss Huang, my math teacher.

3. 告别（Saying goodbye）

I'm afraid I must be leaving/must be off/have to go now. I think it's time for us to leave now.
Good bye! /Bye-bye! See you later. /tomorrow. See you. Good night.

4. 问时间、日期与应答（Asking the time, dates and responding）

Asking the time, dates	Responses
Excuse me. What's the time, please? Excuse me. What time is it? What time do you have? What time is it by your watch? Could you give me the time? When does the bookstore open?	It's half past seven/twenty to eight. It's seven o'clock by my watch. It opens at 7:40 am.
What's the date today? When is your birthday?	Today (It) is April 4. It's May 8th.
What day is (it) today?	Today is Friday./It's Monday.

5. 谈论天气（Talking about the weather）

Asking for the weather	Responses
What's the weather like today? How is the weather today? What's the weather like in Beijing?	It's fine/cloudy/windy. It's getting cold/warm. It's a beautiful day today.
What's the temperature today?	It's 1℃~9℃.

6. 劝告与建议（Giving advice and making suggestions）

Giving advice and making suggestions
You'd better hurry up. Why don't you go for a walk? / Why not go for a walk? How about / What about seeing a film? I advise you not to swim in the river. What do you think of having a walk? Maybe you ought to tell him.

7. 问路与应答（Asking the way and responding）

Asking the way	Responses
1. Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me how to (how I can) get to the bus station? 2. Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me where the Carrefour Supermarket is? 3. Excuse me. I'm looking for a bank. 4. Excuse me. Is there a bookstore near here? 5. Excuse me. How can I get to the airport? 6. Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me the way to the People's Hospital?	1. Drive to Main Street. It's on the right, across from the Carrefour Supermarket. 2. Go/ Walk straight ahead and make a right turn at the first crossing. 3. Turn left at the second crossing. 4. Take the first turn on the right. 5. It's next to the Agricultural Bank of China. 6. Walk one block east and the theatre is at the crossroads. 7. Sorry, I'm new here.

8. 就餐（Taking meals）

Waiter/waitress	Customer
Would you like something to drink/eat/have? Will you have something to drink/eat/have?	Yes, I'd like /I'll have two coffees with cream.
What would you like to drink/eat/have?	I'd like a cup of tea.
Anything else?/ Would you like anything else?	No. Thank you.
Are you ready to order?	Yes, a sandwich and a beef.
May I take your order, please?	Yes, I'd like a beef. I'd like it well-done.
Dumplings with seafood.	What's the specialty here?

9. 就医（Seeing the doctor）

Doctor	Patient
How are you feeling? How do you feel? What's wrong? What's the matter with you? What's the trouble with you? What seems to be the problem?	I'm feeling tired/ terrible. I ache all over. I have got / I have a headache/cold/fever. I am quite well. I'm not quite myself. I have a stuffy nose./I've got a sore throat. My arms and legs feel weak.
Have a good rest./ Drink plenty of water. Take the medicine on time as you are told. Take one pill four times a day for three days. Be careful to keep warm. Don't do much exercise.	

10. 邀请、约会与应答（Making invitations，making appointments and responding）

Invitations	Responses
Would you like/love to join me for lunch? I wonder if you'd like to come to my birthday party. Shall we go and see it? Why not play football? How about going to the movies tonight? Now come with me to have dinner.	**Accept the invitation** Yes, I'd love/like to. That sounds great./That's a good idea. All right then! I'd like it very much. **Refuse the invitation** I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't. Sorry, I can't. But thanks anyway. What a pity! Some other time then.
Making appointments	**Responses**
Will you be free tomorrow? /Are you free tomorrow?	Ok. I'll see you then. /I'll be free. I'm afraid I won't be free tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't meet you then.
What time would you like me to come? /When shall we meet? /When can I see you?	Any time will suit me. / Any time will be OK. Any time is all right.
Can you make it tomorrow? /Will tomorrow be all right? /How about tomorrow? /Is tomorrow OK? /Can we make it a little later? /Shall we make it some other time?	All right. See you then. Sorry, I couldn't make it tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't make it tomorrow.

11. 道歉与应答（Making apologies and responding）

Apologies	Responses
I have an apology to make. /I'd like to make an apology. /I apologize to you for being late./I hope you will forgive me.	Not at all./It's nothing./That's OK./That's all right./It doesn't matter./Never matter./ Never mind./Please don't worry about it.
I'm sorry./ I'm really sorry./ I'm sorry for being late.	

12. 祝愿、祝贺与应答（Good wishes, congratulations and responses）

Good wishes, congratulations	Responses
Good luck!/I wish you good luck/success! Good Journey to you!/ Have a good trip. Have a nice/good time./Happy birthday to you. Congratulations! I'd like to congratulate on your success.	Thank you.
Happy New Year!/ Wish you a very happy new year. Merry Christmas!/May you have the best Christmas.	Happy New Year!/The same to you. Merry Christmas!/ The same to you.

13. 感谢与应答（Expressing thanks and responding）

Thanks	Responses
Thank you./Thanks./Many thanks./Thanks a lot./Thank you very much.	You are welcome. Please don't mention it. It's my/a pleasure. That's OK./That's all right. My pleasure. Not at all.
Thank you all/just the same./Thanks anyway/again.	
You're very kind./It's very kind of you.	

14. 赞同与反对（Expressing agreement and disagreement）

Agreement	Disagreement
I agree with you. Certainly. / Sure. / Of course. No problem. Yes, I think so. OK. / All right. / That's right.	I disagree. / I couldn't agree with you. I don't think so. I'm afraid I disagree with you. Never! No way.

15. 情感表达（Expressing feelings and emotions）

Feelings and emotions
I’m glad / pleased / happy to hear that.
That’s nice / wonderful / great.
We had a good / wonderful time.
Good!
Well done!
It’s a great pity.
I’m so sorry to hear you are going away.
I’m stressed.
She feels nervous.
You look worried.

16. 打电话（Making phone calls）

The first speaker	The second speaker
Could/May I speak to Mary, please?	I’m sorry he’s out at the moment.
Is that Mary ?/Is that Mary speaking?	This is John (speaking).
This is Mary speaking.	Who is that?
Is Mike in/there?	Who is calling/speaking?
May I leave a message?	Hold on (for a moment), please.
Could you take a message?	Just hold the line a minute, please.
Could you ask him/her to call me back?	Could I know who is calling?
Thank you. I’ll call again/call her back.	Hello! 6098724.
	May I take a message for you?

17. 偏爱、喜好与厌恶（Preference, likes and dislikes）

Preference, likes and dislikes	Responses
What’s your favorite subject?	My favorite movie star is Mary Green.
What subjects are you interested in?	I like sports. / I love sports./ I hate sports./ I dislike math.
What sports do you like best?	I’m very fond of stamp collecting.
	I’m interested in math. /I really enjoy the song.
	I’m crazy about diving.

18. 购物（Shopping）

Shop assistant	Customer
What can I do for you? Can I help you?/May I help you?	I'd like to buy a bag./I want to buy a bag./ I'm looking for a skirt for my daughter./Can you show me this pair of sports shoes?
What color /kind do you like/want? What size do you want/take?	How much is it?/What's the price of it?/What's the charge for it?/How much shall I pay for it?/How much does it cost?/ How much is it all together, please?/What does it come to?
How many/much do you want/need?	I'm afraid it is too expensive. Do you have any cheaper ones?
It is ten yuan./ It sells at 2 pounds a bottle. It's on sale.	Can I try it on?
That'll be 30 dollars with the tax./That comes to 30 dollars.	Just this one, please./I want three.
Yes. Try this one please. It's cheaper.	Here is the money./Here is 100 yuan.
Thank you. Here is your change.	

19. 求职（Looking for a job）

Interviewer	Interviewee
Where did you graduate from?	I'd like to apply for the job.
Do you have any experience?	I graduated from …
What about your experience?	My major is …
Can you speak English well?	Is it still open?/do you have openings?
What kind of job are you applying for?	Yes, I have worked in a company for…
What kind of education have you got?	I'm applying for a …position.
Would you like to come and fill out an application form?	What's the salary, please?
	Do I have to work overtime?
How much are you looking for?	Thank you for your consideration.

20. 求助与提供帮助（Asking for and offering help）

Offers	Responses
Can/Could/May I help you? What can I do for you? Would you like me to help you with your lesson? Is there anything I can do for you? Do you want me to help you?	**Accept the offering** Thanks. That would be fine. That's very kind of you. Thank you for your help. Yes, please. Here, please take my bag. **Refuse the offering** No, thanks/Thank you./Thank you all the same./That's very kind of you. But I can manage it myself.

21. 预定（Reservation）

Receptionist	Customer
Room reservations. Can I help you? The current rate is $50 per night. Could you tell me your name, sir? What time would you like your table? For how many people? By the way, we only keep your table till 8:00 p.m. Allow me to confirm the reservation. We look forward to seeing you next Tuesday.	I'd like to book/ reserve a double room for Tuesday next week. What's the rate, please? It's Moore. Perhaps 7:30. Let me see. 6 people. I'd like to book/ reserve a table for dinner this evening. We'd like to sit by the window.

22. 意愿与打算（Intentions and plans）

Intentions and plans
What's your plan for National Day? What are you going to do in the new term? I want to be a famous football player in the future. I plan to invite Mr. Zhang to our wedding. I'd like to take part in more sporting events. I hope to work in Alibaba. I wish to live in America.



跟踪训练

一、补全对话（每空只能填写一个单词）

1. —_____ do you do? I don't think we've met. My name is John.
 —How _____ you do?
2. —What's _____ _____ sport?
 —I like swimming best.
3. —_____ _____ do you go to bed?
 —I usually go to bed at 9:30, and at about 11 o'clock on weekends.
4. —What's the _____ _____ today?
 —It's sunny today, but the radio says it will be rainy on Friday.

5. —Excuse me, Mrs. Smith. I’m afraid I can’t finish my homework today.
 —_____ the matter?
 —I have a headache, and I have to see a _____.
6. —Excuse me, _____ _____ is the watch?
 —Usually it’s 120 yuan, but today it’s only half price.
7. —Hello! Could I _____ _____ John Smith, please?
 —Smith? There is no Smith here. I’m afraid you’ve got the wrong number.
8. —Are you _____ _____ order?
 —Yes, I’d like a hamburger and an ice-cream, please.
9. —You know, we have a three-day holiday next month. Do you want to go for a picnic?
 —That’s a great _____. _____ do you want to go?
 —To the beach.
10. —I’m going to Qingdao to spend my summer holiday.
 —Really? Have a _____ _____.
11. —Hello, Jane! _____ are you _____?
 —I’m fine. Thank you.
12. —Oh, dear, I have passed the driving test.
 —Congratulations!
 —_____ _____!
13. —Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to the railway station?
 —Sorry, I’m a stranger here.
 —Thank you _____ the _____.
14. —Excuse me,_____ _____ is it?
 —Look, there’s a clock over there. It says three thirty.
15. —What’s _____ _____ you, John?
 —I don’t feel very well.
16. —Tom, May I use your bike?
 —_____ _____, but you can use it tomorrow.
17. —I’m sorry for forgetting to bring your books.
 —It_____ _____.
18. — _____ me, sir. This is a non-smoking school.
 —Oh, _____. I didn’t know that. I won’t again.
19. —Let’s go swimming, _____ _____?

—OK, let's go.

20. —How are you getting on with your cleaning? Do you need any help?

—That's very _____ _____ you, but I think I'm all right.

21. —Excuse me, can you tell me _____ the nearest bank_____, please?

—Mm, let me think. Oh yes! It's past the post office, next to a big market.

22. —What's_____ _____today?

—It's March 12, Tree Planting Day.

23. —_____ _____ does this book cost?

—At least one dollar.

24.—Could I _____ _____ Mr. Johnson?

—I'm afraid he isn't in. This is Mary speaking. Can I help you?

25. —Lucy, _____ _____ our English teacher, Miss Zhao.

—Glad to meet you, Miss Zhao.

21. —Would you like some more orange, sir?

—_____, _____. I have had enough.

22. —Happy New Year!

—The_____ _____you!

23. —You look more beautiful with that hat.

—_____. I'm _____ to hear you say that.

24. —_____ shall we meet, at 6:00 or at 6:30?

—Well, _____ time is OK.

25. —I believe we've met somewhere before.

—No, I don't_____ _____.

26. —Could we have the honor of your presence at the party?

— _____, I can't. But _____ anyway.

27. — Hi, Eric! You went to the cinema last night, didn't you?

— Yes, I went there with my sister.

—_____ do you _____ the film?

— Wonderful.

28. —_____ _____ we go to the New Sichuan Restaurant for our lunch?

—Great! I've been expecting that.

29. —I enjoyed a very good holiday in my hometown.

—Oh, I'm glad _____ _____ that.

30. —I have made a decision to spend my holiday on the beach.

—Sounds wonderful. I'm sure you'll _____ _____ good time.

31. —Do you have any _____ _____?

—After graduation, I have been working at the personnel department of Great Universal Advertising Agency.

32. —What's your expected _____?

—I _____ to be paid according to my abilities.

33. —Excuse me, I am Sun Lin. I am here about your advertisement for a tour guide. Is it still _____?

—Yes. One more is needed.

—Oh, I am so lucky. I want to_____ for it.

34. —Can you tell me what your career _____ is?

—I hope to _____ a great businessman like Ma Yun in the future.

35. —Excuse me, I'm _____ in the job as a tour guide. Do you have any _____?

—Not right now, but we can keep your name on the file.

（二）补全对话（用适当的短语或句子完成对话）

1. —What's up, Mary?

—_____

2. —How are things going?

—_____

3. —_____

—Nice to meet you, Mary. My name is John.

4. —I think it's time for us to leave now. Bye-bye.

—_____

5. —I don't feel well today.

—What's the matter?

—_____

6. —_____

—OK. I'd like to have hamburgers.

7. —Would you like some more bread?

—_____

8. —Well, it's a wonderful day. I wonder if you'd like to go boating with us.

—_____

9. —_____

—It's hard to say. I like many kinds of animals, for example, dogs, cats, rabbits and monkeys.

10. —I'm sorry to have you waiting for a long time.

—_____

11. —Thank you for your help.

—_____

12. —Would you please help me move this box?

—_____.Oh,…it's too heavy. We've got to do it together.

13. —_____

—It's cloudy today.

14. —_____

—It's Monday.

15. —_____

—It's October 1st.

第二部分
答题策略

一、英语知识运用

应试技巧和案例分析

英语知识运用是以选择题的形式来考查。该题型主要有“题干”和“选项”两部分组成，“题干”通常是留有空白的一个句子、一组对话或附有相关语境信息的图、文、表等，要求考生从每题所给的四个选项中选择一个符合语境或语意的正确答案。

英语知识运用选择题的内容主要涉及词汇、固定搭配和情景交际等方面，题干比较灵活，语境覆盖面广，主要考查考生对英语基础知识的应用及在具体语境中理解语法与灵活运用语言的能力。

因此，要做好英语知识运用选择题，提高答题的准确率，考生在复习中掌握一些基本的解题方法很有必要。答题思路：

1．推敲题干，理解语境，粗读选项

大部分的选择题，粗看选项，就能找准考点，但较多的交际式题干选项不一样，这就需要分析题干与选项关系，才能明确该题考查的知识。

2．逻辑推理，排除干扰，正确选择

找准考查内容的角度，仅仅是正确解题的思路萌芽。要选出答案就需要根据题干设计，从句子结构、习惯用语、句意选择、语意与语境搭配等不同角度进行逻辑推敲，还应注意仔细阅读其词序，避免类似形式的干扰。具体方法有直接法、排除法、推理法、比较法、固定搭配等，有时要综合运用各种方法。

（1）直接法。

主要用于四个选项是同一个词或短语的不同变化形式、固定搭配及语意与语境搭配等题。做题时利用题干提供的信息，找准考点，有时还需考虑固定搭配等，然后直接选出正确答案。

例 1. Summer holiday is coming. About two _____ students in our school will go camping.

A. hundred B. hundreds C. hundred of D. hundreds of (2008, 2)

解析：英语中百、千、万等数量词表约数时（即与 of 连用）用复数，表具体数量（其前有具体的数词限定）时用单数，也不能与 of 连用。空格前的 two 决定了应用单数，所以答案为 A。

例 2. We should stop _____ water, for it is limited in the world.

A. to waste B. waste C. wasted D. wasting (2009, 6)

解析：stop doing 停止做某事，stop to do 停下来去做某事，根据句意：我们应该停止浪费水，因为是有限的。所以应该使用 stop doing 这一结构，答案为 D。

例 3. —Whose school uniform is this?

—_____.

A. Peter B. Peter's C. It's Peter D. Its Peter's (2010, 1)

解析：Peter's 是所有格，表示彼得的。根据句意：—这是谁的校服？—彼得的。所以答案为 B。

例 4. —Would you like _____ some fruit?

—No, thanks. I don't feel like anything now.

A. have B. had C. having D. to have (2014, 9)

解析：题目中空格前的 would you like 可以看出考查固定短语 would like to do sth. 根据句意："—你想要些水果吗？—不，谢谢！我现在什么都不想吃。"所以答案为 D。

（2）排除法。

排除法——顾名思义，就是依据句子结构、句意、习惯用法或题干提供的其他相关信息排除某些选项，使选择变得简单、直接，从而快速地找出正确答案的一种方法。

例 1. Boys, don't touch the machine, _____ you may hurt yourselves.

A. and B. but C. or D. so (2008, 3)

解析：英语句法中的"祈使句加 and 或 or 再加句子"结构，相当于 if 引导的状语从句，当主句表示的是满足条件从句能达到的积极肯定意味或是说话人希望得到的结果时，用 and，否则用 or。根据句意："不要触摸这机器，否则，可能伤到自己。"表示的是不希望发生的结果，应该用 or。答案为 C。

例 2. There are quite a few books on the shelf, but _____ of them is useful to him.

A. both B. all C. neither D. none (2008, 4)

解析：根据句意："书架上有许多书"故排除 A 选项和 C 选项，谓语动词是单数，排除 B 选项。答案为 D。

例 3. — Do you know the place _____ we'll build a library?

— Yes. It's next to our dining room.

A. that B. where C. which D. what (2009, 11)

解析：根据句子结构，是定语从句，所以排除 D 选项；所修饰的先行词在定语从句中做地点状语，所以排除 A 选项和 C 选项。答案为 B。

例 4. —Do you know the game of Go? It is an interesting chess game.

—Yes. There _____ a match in our school club tomorrow afternoon.

A. will be　　B. will have　　C. has　　D. is (2010, 19)

解析：根据 tomorrow afternoon 是一般将来时态的时间状语，所以排除 C 选项和 D 选项；根据 there be 句型排除 B 选项。所以答案为 A。

例 5. — _____ lovely weather it is! Shall we go for a picnic?

— That's a good idea.

A. What a　　B. What　　C. How a　　D. How (2014, 8)

解析：该题考查感叹句。根据 weather 是不可数名词，排除 A 选项和 C 选项，再根据感叹句句型 What+形容词+不可数名词+主谓！所以答案为 B。

（3）推理法。

有的选择题，仔细观察各选项，从语法结构上分析，不止一个正确，甚至全对；从词意上考虑，某些选项又与句意不符，所以要通过逻辑推理才能得出正确的答案，特别是对交际英语考查时，更需结合题干提供的语境及问与答之间的必然联系来推导出答案。

例 1. —I don't know how to use the digital camera.

—It doesn't matter. Here is the _____.

A. message　　B. instruction

C. information　　D. advertisement (2008,11)

解析：根据句意："我不会用数码相机。""没关系，这里有…"根据选项

A. message(消息)，B. instruction (说明)，C. information (信息)，D. advertisement (广告)，所以选 B。

例 2. —Could you tell me_____?

—Sure. He's a mechanic.

A. where is your father　　B. what does your father do

C. where your father is　　D. what your father is (2008, 13)

解析：从句子结构和选项看，考查的是宾语从句。宾语从句的语序应是陈述句语序；从意思看，询问的是他父亲的职业，按英语惯用法疑问词用 what，所以选 D。

例 3. — What do you want to be in the future, Gary?

— _____. I'm so interested in car repairing.

A. A typist　　B. A mechanic

C. a cashier　　D. A computer programmer (2010, 13)

解析：从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。typist 打字员；mechanic 技工；cashier 收银员；computer programmer 电脑程序设计师。根据答语：我对汽车修理很感兴趣，所以答案为 B。

例 4. — I didn't win the match.

— Don't lose heart! _____ you work hard, hope is always around you.

A. Even though　　B. Unless

C. As long as　　D. As far as (2011, 17)

解析：从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。even though 即使；unless 除非；as long as 只要；as far as 和…一样远。根据句意：—我输了比赛。—别灰心！只要你努力，希望总

会伴你左右。所以答案为 C。

例 5. — What does Xiao Zhang look like?

— He is _____.

A. my brother B. tall and thin C. a teacher D. 20 years old(2014, 2)

解析：从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。根据句意：—小张长得怎么样？—他又高又瘦。所以答案为 B。

例 6. — I'm going to a job interview. I feel a little _____.

— Take it easy. Listening to music can help you relax.

A. comfortable B. satisfied

C. nervous D. disappointed (2014, 26)

解析：从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。根据句意：—我要去参加工作面试了。我感到有点紧张。—放轻松。听音乐有助于你放松。所以答案为 C。

（4）比较法。

有的选择题，读完题干就明确知道了考点，但四个选项都是考查的内容，只是排序或结构有差别，这就需要利用所学的语法知识和词汇知识，仔细进行比较，最后得出正确答案。

例 1. —Can I have a look at the book _____ you bought yesterday?

—Of course you can. Here it is.

A. what B. who C. / D. where (2008, 6)

解析：根据句子结构看考查的是定语从句。比较四个选项，排除不能引导定语从句的 A 选项，B 选项 who 引导的定语从句，所修饰的词应该指人，D 选项 where 引导的定语从句所修饰的词应该指代地点，在定语从句中做状语。而考查的定语从句所修饰的词 "book" 指物，关系代词在定语从句中做 bought 的宾语，可以是关系代词 that, which 也可以省略，所以选 C。

例 2. Take my advice and you'll see _____ things aren't as bad as you think.

A. whether B. if C. that D. what (2010, 11)

解析：根据句子结构看考查的是宾语从句。比较四个选项，A 选项和 B 选项表示是否，C 选项无具体意义，D 选项表示什么。根据句意：采纳我的建议，你会明白事情并不像你想的那样糟糕。所以答案为 C。

例 3. Lily graduated from a vocational school. If she wants to apply for the position as an assistant, she knows she will _____.

ASSISTANT WANTED
FOR BUSY RESTAURANT
Some evenings and weekend work
All meals free Tel:4320167

A. be very busy on weekends B. work only in evenings

C. only have free meals on weekends D. e-mail for more information (2014, 28)

解析：根据题目看考查的是信息识别。比较四个选项，可以根据 some evenings 排除 B 选项；根据 All meals free 排除 C 选项；根据 Tel:4320167 排除 D 选项；再根据 Some evenings and weekend work 判断出 A 选项正确。所以答案为 A。

以上是做选择题常用的几种答题方法。要取得好成绩，仅靠掌握一些答题技巧是远远不够的。因此，要做好选择题必须牢固掌握英语基础知识，并学会灵活运用；认真观察题干所提供的语境，将所考查的语言点进行全面的、系统的分析。



专项训练一

1. — Hello, Mr. Li. _____?
—Fine, thanks. And you?
A. How are you　　B. How do you do
C. What are you doing　　D. Who are you

2. —What's _____ name?
—_____ name is Zhang Li.
A. you; My　　B. your; My　　C. yours; I　　D. you; Mine

3. —Why not climb Mount Tai with us tomorrow?
—_____.
A. Many thanks　　B. It's a pity
C. That sounds great　　D. Yes, I'd love to

4. —What a good _____ you've given us! Thanks a lot.
—My pleasure.
A. information　　B. suggestion　　C. news　　D. advice

5. —How heavily it is raining!
—What a pity! We have to _____our sports meeting.
A. put on　　B. put out　　C. put off　　D. put up

6. —We'd like to have a dance party in your hotel. Can you arrange a room for us?
—_____.
A. Not at all　　B. No problem　　C. No way　　D. No thanks

7. —You look sad. What's up?
—_____ we tried our best, we lost the game.
A. When　　B. Where　　C. Whether　　D. Although

8. — What do you _____ my hometown?
— It's like a beautiful garden with trees and flowers.
A. look at　　B. talk about　　C. think of　　D. feel like

9. Miss Yang is an _____ secretary. She always finishes her work in advance.
A. efficient　　B. efficiently　　C. office　　D. officially

10. Mary usually sets up important events on the phone calendar. She is going to _____

on the fourth of June.



A. get married　　B. order some calendar cards
C. take several days' annual leave　　D. celebrate her mother's birthday

11. —Why do you like English?
—Because I find it _____.
A. boring　　B. tiring　　C. interesting　　D. worrying

12. If you and a Canadian get to _____ at the same time, he would let you pay first.
A. the cashier　　B. a cashier　　C. the cashier's　　D. cashier's

13. —Could I borrow your camera?
—_____ , but please give it back by Saturday.
A. I am sorry　　B. Certainly not
C. Of course　　D. No, thanks

14. —_____ do you go to the library?
—Once a week.
A. How old　　B. How long　　C. How far　　D. How often

15. —Shall we go to the concert now?
—Sorry, I can't. I _____ my homework.
A. do　　B. doing　　C. am doing　　D. did

16. —What skills do you have?
—Well, I majored_____ computer in the university. I can create software.
A. of　　B. in　　C. at　　D. to

17. —You'd better take your_____ in case it rains.
—Thanks for your mentioning.
A. T-shirt　　B. sweater　　C. pant　　D. umbrella

18. It's 3 o'clock now. It's time _____ the game.
A. to start　　B. start　　C. starting　　D. started

19. My father's timely help _____ my confidence in solving problems.
A. added up　　B. added in　　C. added to　　D. added up to

20. —I'd like to invite you to have dinner this afternoon, Mr. Smith.
— _____.
A. I'd love to, but I have other plans　　B. I'd rather stay home

C. Oh, no. Let's not　　D. Oh, no. That'll be too much trouble

专项训练二

1. —_____ the weather like today?
—It's rainy.
A. What　　B. How　　C. What's　　D. How's

2. —It will be my turn. I feel a little nervous.
—_____ You can make it!
A. Congratulations!　　B. Have a good time.
C. Look out!　　D. Take it easy.

3. —It's raining outside. _____ take an umbrella?
—All right. Thanks.
A. Why not　　B. What about　　C. How about　　D. Why don't

4. The weather report says there _____ a strong wind tomorrow.
A. is going to have　　B. is going to be
C. has been　　D. has

5. It's snowing hard. You'd better _____ your coat.
A. have on　　B. wear　　C. put on　　D. take off

6. The post office is not far from here. It's only ten _____ ride by bike.
A. minute　　B. minutes　　C. minute's　　D. minutes'

7. —What's the young lady like at the school gate?
—_____.
A. She is a teacher　　B. She is 18
C. She is beautiful　　D. She is a friend of mine

8. — Oh! We've just missed the 7 o'clock film.
— _____. It'll be on again in an hour.
A. With pleasure　　B. Don't worry
C. Have fun　　D. Good idea

9. Of the two types of communication, I think the _____ is more popular in the workplace.
A. latter　　B. later　　C. late　　D. lately

10. — Thank you for helping me solve the problem.
—_____.
A. Of course　　B. All right
C. It's my pleasure　　D. Take it easy

11. —_____. Where is the nearest post office?
—Go along the road and turn left at the first crossing. You can't miss it.

A. Excuse me　　B. I'm sorry

C. Beg your pardon　　D. What a pity

12. —Don't _____ too late, or you will feel tired in class tomorrow.

—I won't, Mum.

A. think up　　B. get up　　C. wake up　　D. stay up

13. Linda wants to go to the cinema. When she gets there, she finds that on March 2 _____.

NOTICE

CINEMA CLOSED

Will reopen Friday, March 2

A. the cinema will open

B. the cinema will be closed

C. the price will go down

D. the workers will have a day off

14. The beautiful scenery and pleasant weather _____ tourists to Qingdao from all over the world.

A. attack　　B. attract　　C. cause　　D. catch

15. The task needs teamwork. _____ could be achieved unless we work well together.

A. Something　　B. Nothing　　C. Anything　　D.Everything

16. I still remember my uncle came back home _____ a snowy morning.

A. in　　B. at　　C. on　　D. for

17. —We will set off at 8 o'clock tomorrow. Don't be late.

—OK. I will be there ten minutes_____.

A. sooner　　B. earlier　　C. faster　　D. slower

18. —I'll go to South Korea for a trip next weekend.

—Great! _____

A. Glad to see you again.　　B. Good luck!

C. Have a good time!　　D. Best wishes!

19. —Hello, is Mike there?

—Sorry, he isn't in _____.

A. in a moment　　B. for a moment

C. at the moment　　D. for the moment

20. —Could you help me look after my flowers while I'm away?

—_____

A. Never mind.　　B. Good idea!　　C. With pleasure.　　D. Not at all.

专项训练三

1. —_____?
—I've got a headache and I don't feel like eating anything.
A. What's wrong with you　　B. How are you
C. What do you think of it　　D. How is it going

2. —What does your sister do?
—_____.
A. She is very thin　　B. She looks very young
C. She is a nurse　　D. She does the housework

3. Don't take children into the room of a sick person unless there _____special reasons for it.
A. is　　B. would be　　C. were　　D. are

4. —Let's go cycling, shall we?
—_____
A. Terrible.　　B. Great!　　C. Go ahead.　　D. That's right.

5. The famous singer is _____ to hold a grand concert in Beijing next month.
A. planned　　B. promised　　C. encouraged　　D. scheduled

6. —Oh, Mr. Smith, I'm not quite _____ today.
—You should go to see a doctor at once.
A. myself　　B. my　　C. mine　　D. me

7. —_____ will the party start?
—In two hours.
A. How far　　B. How soon　　C. How long　　D. How much

8. It's a great honor to invite you to _____ our wedding.
A. be worried about　　B. be sorry for
C. be present at　　D. be popular with

9. —Have a nice weekend!
—_____
A. You're so kind.　　B. The same to you.
C. All right.　　D. With pleasure.

10. You should dress formally for the interview in order to leave a good _____ on the interviewers.
A. impression　　B. attention　　C. expression　　D. relation

11. We'd better _____ a notice here.
A. put off　　B. put on　　C. put up　　D. put out

12. —I'm sorry, I forgot to bring your book.

—_____.

A. You are welcome　　B. My pleasure

C. It doesn't matter　　D. Beg your pardon

13. —Where did you _____ your weekend?

—On the beach. We had a wonderful time there.

A. cost　　B. spend　　C. take　　D. pay

14. Alice wants to buy some books in the cafeteria. She should go there at _____.

Book Fair
Many great books to choose from!
June 3 and 4, 9 A.M. to 5 P.M.
In the college cafeteria

A. 8 A.M, June 3　　B. 5 A.M, June 3

C. 3 P.M, June 4　　D. 6 P.M, June 4

15. The song brought back so many childhood memories. I could _____ control my feelings at the moment.

A. clearly　　B. hardly　　C. nearly　　D. really

16. —Please send my Christmas _____ to your parents.

—I will. Thank you.

A. greet　　B. greeting　　C. greetings　　D. greets

17. The sea covers _____ of the earth.

A. three fourth　　B. three fourths　　C. three four　　D. three fours

18. —I have a bad cough. I can't sleep well at night.

—_____

A. I'm sorry to hear that.　　B. Good idea.

C. I'm glad to hear that.　　D. Best wishes.

19. The daughter was seriously ill at night and a doctor was _____ at once.

A. sent out　　B. sent for　　C. sent up　　D. sent off

20. Now I'm _____ the sales department. It also means more responsibility for me.

A. in charge of　　B. in place of

C. in favor of　　D. in honor of

专项训练四

1. —How's it going, Jerry?

—_____.

A. Well done　　B. Long time no see

C. Pretty good　　D. Nice to meet you

2. It is helpful to _____ a good habit of reading in language learning.
A. take　　B. show　　C. develop　　D. match

3. In order to live a _____ life, people try every way to make good use of all the things in nature.
A. satisfaction　　B. satisfy　　C. satisfied　　D. satisfying

4. —_____ Jim. Is Tom there?
—This is Tom speaking.
A. I am　　B. This is　　C. You are　　D. Are you

5. The people in the earthquake meet lots of difficulties, but they haven't _____ hope.
A. looked for　　B. waited for　　C. picked up　　D. given up

6. —I'm sorry to trouble you. Could I use your cell phone, please?
—_____.
A. Yes, you can　　B. Yes, you may
C. No, you shouldn't　　D. Sorry, you needn't

7. —I don't agree with Ms. Jones. What about you?
—I don't like _____.
A. that she says　　B. what she says
C. what does she say　　D. which she says

8. —Is it a very popular chess game?
—Yes, but I think it needs skills _____.
A. as well　　B. also　　C. so　　D. either

9. — Jenny fell off the bus and hurt her leg.
— _____.
A. I'm sorry to hear that　　B. It doesn't matter
C. It's a pleasure　　D. Thank you

10. —I want to carry the box upstairs. Would you mind helping me with it?
—_____.
A. Thanks a lot　　B. Of course
C. You'd better not　　D. Of course not

11. Peter is very _____. People can get along well with him easily.
A. selfish　　B. friendly　　C. impolite　　D. forgetful

12. Jogging is a _____ sport. More and more people like it.
A. relaxed　　B. relax　　C. relaxes　　D. relaxing

13. Mr. Wang is a humorous man. He often makes his classes _____ laughter.
A. filled with　　B. covered with
C. mixed with　　D. pleased with

14. I'm surprised to hear from Betty. _____, we last met ten years ago.
A. On one hand　　B. That is to say

C. Believe it or not　　D. In other words

15. —Hey, Ted. You are wanted _____ the phone.
—I'm coming.
A. in　　B. on　　C. at　　D. for

16. The baby is sleeping. Please speak _____.
A. loudly　　B. clearly　　C. politely　　D. quietly

17. Now more and more farmers use the Internet to sell their local _____ grown on the farm.
A. produce　　B. sight　　C. culture　　D. custom

18. —I don't know where to go this summer vacation.
—Why not _____ visiting Suzhou? There are many places of interest there.
A. suggest　　B. wonder　　C. consider　　D. regard

19. Linda has a pet dog. She can _____ on Nov. 4th.



A. visit County Animal Hospital the whole day
B. feed the sick cats and dogs
C. learn how to look after her pet for free.
D. provide a new home for all animals there

20. Let me _____ my friend Want Tao to you.
A. introduction　　B. introduce　　C. introducing　　D. introduced

专项训练五

1. —Hello, this is Tom.
—Hello, Tom. Would you like to _____ the game this afternoon?
A. take　　B. attend　　C. join　　D. join in

2. —I feel really nervous before the interview.
—_____ I'm sure you are the best.
A. Forget it.　　B. What's up?
C. Take it easy.　　D. What's happening?

3. It seems that there will be _____ in our club this weekend.
A. exciting something　　B. something excited
C. something exciting　　D. excites something

4. If you want to buy this dress, you'd better _____ first to make sure it fits you.
A. try it on　　B. take it off　　C. tidy it up　　D. pay for it

5. The more you practice, _____ you will be.
A. the best　　B. best　　C. the better　　D. better

6. —What kind of education have you got?
—_____.
A. I worked as a cashier in a company
B. I like swimming best
C. I prefer to stay at home
D. I graduated from Jinan University

7. —Mom, I was the first to reach the top of the mountain.
—Good job, Jack! I'm _____ of you.
A. careful　　B. proud　　C. tired　　D. afraid

8. —_____?
—She works as a secretary in a foreign company.
A. What does your sister like　　B. Where does your sister live
C. What does your sister do　　D. What is your sister's future goal

9. —Is it convenient to go sightseeing in Qingdao?
—Of course. _____ there are beautiful sights, there are buses in Qingdao.
A. Unless　　B. Though　　C. While　　D. Where

10. —I have great _____ in finishing the work by myself. Could you help me?
—No problem.
A. difficulty　　B. success　　C. advice　　D. pleasure

11. After we _____ the hotel, we will go to the Qingdao Pier.
A. arrive　　B. arrive at　　C. get at　　D. reach at

12. —TV says there will be a storm tomorrow.
—_____. I planned to go climbing with my classmates.
A. Bad luck　　B. I'm afraid so
C. Sounds good　　D. I hope so

13. My neighbor asked me _____ I heard the big noise last night or not.
A. if　　B. whether　　C. what　　D. when

14. Some people choose jobs for other reasons _____ money these days.
A. for　　B. besides　　C. except　　D. with

15. Jim sold most of his things. He has hardly _____ left in the house.
A. everything　　B. nothing　　C. something　　D. anything

16. —_____?
—I'd like to buy some traditional Chinese things.
A. What would you like to eat　　B. What's the matter with you

C. What's your favorite sport　　D. What can I do for you

17. —Lin Tao, could you lend me your book, please?
—Sorry, but I _____ it for only half an hour. I haven't finished it.
A. have had　　B. have borrowed
C. have bought　　D. have lent

18. Mr. Li wants to buy a teapot for his father. He needs to _____.



Name：Tea pot　Color：Brown　Price：￥120
Delivery time：10 workdays after receiving 30% payment online. Tea pots with good quality. And the best gift for your friends or your family.

A. get the teapot in 5 days
B. pay all the money first
C. pay ¥ 36 first online
D. check the teapot's quality

19. —Can you tell me _____?
—Yes, in a week.
A. how soon the work will be finished
B. when will the work be finished
C. why the work will be finished
D. how long the work has been finished

20. —I will go to see my grandmother this afternoon, so I can't go swimming with you.
—_____.
A. It's my pleasure　　B. That's a pity
C. You are welcome　　D. Sure, I am

专项训练六

1. —_____?
—Yes, I'd like some steak.
A. What would you like to eat
B. What would you like to drink
C. Would you like something to eat
D. Would you like something to drink

2. —Have you got a job ?
—No, I'm_____a position as a computer programmer.
A. begging for　　B. standing for
C. leaving for　　D. applying for

3. —Hello. Is Judy there?

—Just_____a moment, Annie.

A. hold on　　B. hold up　　C. hold out　　D. hold back

4. —Do you mind if we play cards here?

—_____. There's a sign that says "Quiet"

A. I'd love to　　B. Go ahead　　C. Sure not　　D. Better not

5. I like the _____ weather here. It's neither hot in summer nor cold in winter.

A. pleased　　B. please　　C. pleasant　　D. pleasure

6. —What skills do you have?

— Well, _____.

A. I can create software

B. I did a part-time job last year

C. I graduated from a vocational school

D. I want to be a mechanic

7. —Would you like to have dinner with us tonight?

—_____, but I'm busy with my work.

A. I'm sorry　　B. I'd love to　　C. I think so　　D. I won't

8. The little girl often _____ on the shopping cart sleeping.

A. laid　　B. lies　　C. lied　　D. lying

9. _____ the coach's help, we won the football match.

A. According to　　B. Thanks for

C. Thanks to　　D. In order to

10. My brother works as a(n)_____. His job is to repair and maintain car engines.

A. mechanic　　B. electrician　　C. musician　　D. employer

11. —The leather shoes look nice. _____?

—That comes to 500 yuan.

A. What color are they　　B. How much are they

C. What size do you take　　D. How do you like them

12. —I'm looking for an iPhone. Can you show me some?

— _____ this one? It sells well.

A. How much　　B. How about　　C. How many　　D. How long

13. A tidy _____ is necessary for the interviewee in a job interview.

A. appear　　B. appeared　　C. appears　　D. appearance

14. Once you make a _____, you should not break it. Otherwise, you'll not be trusted.

A. promise　　B. list　　C. choice　　D. plan

15. —Our English teacher works very hard and hardly ever feels tired.

—I think she is really _____.

A. confident　　B. energetic　　C. outgoing　　D. creative

16. He's never seen such a good film,_____ he?

A. has B. isn't C. is D. hasn't

17. _____ of the students in our class can talk with the foreigners in English fluently.

A. Two three B. Two thirds C. Two third D. Second three

18. Mr. Taylor takes his four-year-old child to the exhibition. They will pay _____ for regular tickets.

Ticket Prices (Nov-Sept)	Grown-ups	Children/ Students	Seniors
Single Exhibit Ticket	$6.00	$4.00	$5.50
Regular Ticket	$10.95	$5.95	$8.95
Children 5 and under are free			

A. $5.95 B. $14.9 C. $16.8 D. $ 10.95

19. The hospital is doing its best to _____ the patients with the best treatment and service.

A. offer B. give C. provide D. order

20. —Sir, could you please put out your cigarette? This is a non-smoking area.

—_____.

A. Not at all B. I'm sorry about this

C. Sure, I'd love to D. Never mind

专项训练七

1. —Must I come here tomorrow ?

—No, you _____.

A. needn't B. can't C. mustn't D. may not

2. Some experts think that language learning is much _____ for children than adults.

A. easier B. easiest C. easily D. more easily

3. Linda often jogs by the lake in the morning. Seeing the wood sign, she knows it warns people not to _____ in the lake.



A. sit alone B. boat C. swim D. fish

4. —What do you think of the dumplings?

—They _____ really delicious.

A. feel　　B. sound　　C. look　　D. taste

5. Don't _____ everywhere. We should put them into the dustbins.

A. throw away them　　B. threw them away

C. throw them away　　D. throwing them away

6. Listen! Someone _____ the door.

A. is knocking at　　B. knocks at

C. knocked at　　D. was knocking at

7. Everybody should do something to save water, for it is_____in the world.

A. used　　B. convenient　　C. limited　　D. available

8. Cindy has been sent to hospital because she _____ heart disease.

A. resulted from　　B. suffered from

C. heard from　　D. kept from

9. —Please help _____ to some fish.

—Thank you, but I have had enough.

A. you　　B. yourself　　C. your　　D. yours

10. —You are not allowed to smoke here.

—_____.

A. I don't know　　B. Excuse me

C. Oh, I'm sorry　　D. Don't mention it

11. The Whites are going to have a picnic tomorrow. They should pay attention to the program at _____.

Programs on CXTV Channel 1

12:30 Legal Report	18:30 Cartoon Film
13:12 Football Match	19:30 Weather Report
15:30 Talk Show	20:00 TV Play

A. 12:30 Legal Report　　B. 15:30 Talk Show

C. 18:30 Cartoon Film　　D. 19:30 Weather Report

12. The Chinese government decided to _____ measures to fight against air pollution.

A. make　　B. put　　C. take　　D. bring

13.—Please have a seat. Did you bring your resume?

—Yes. _____.

A. Here they are　　B. That's right

C. Here you are　　D. You are welcome

14. When you receive my e-mail, please _____ me as soon as possible.

A. lead to　　B. reply to　　C. turn to　　D. return to

15. When you are going out for a trip, you should have everything ready _____.

A. at times B. ahead of time C. in time D. on time

16. More trees _____ next year to make the city greener.

A. are planted B. will plant

C. will be planted D. would be planted

17. —_____

—He is tall and attractive.

A. How is Jack doing? B. How does Jack like it?

C. What does Jack look like? D. What does Jack like best?

18. I _____ all my friends will be present at my birthday party.

A. did hope B. does hope C. do hope D. to hope

19. —Do you want to eat here, sir?

—No. Just fish and chips to _____, please.

A. get away B. go away C. take away D. throw away

20. —_____

—I feel a little stressed. I have to take a test tomorrow.

A. What do you think of the test?

B. How do you like the weather?

C. What about having a cup of coffee?

D. How do you feel today?



专项训练八

1. —Rose isn't here today. Is she ill?

— _____. I saw her at the doctor's this morning.

A. I hope so B. I don't mind

C. I am afraid so D. I don't think so

2. —Congratulations! You have won the first prize in the photo competition.

— _____

A. Good idea! B. Thank you! C. Of course. D. Enjoy yourself!

3. The dress was very expensive, _____ I didn't buy it.

A. or B. and C. so D. but

4. Father's Day is coming. I will buy a present for my father to _____ my thanks.

A. express B. speak C. receive D. include

5. —I won't go with you to climb the mountains tomorrow.

—_____?

A. Why not B. How C. When D. What about

6. —_____

—Yeah, I've just passed the driving test.

A. You look disappointed.　　B. You are looking so happy.
C. Do you feel stressed?　　D. Are you worried about it?

7. I think Bob is the suitable person to take the job because he can do the work well with_____ money and _____ people.
A. less; less　　B. less; more　　C. more; fewer　　D. less; fewer

8. —How are you getting along with your classmates?
—Very well. They are all _____ me.
A. afraid of　　B. friendly to　　C. angry with　　D. sorry for

9. —Could you help me _____ the meeting materials, Mr. Swift?
—No problem.
A. break out　　B. come out　　C. hand out　　D. put out

10. You had better ask for _____ advice before going into a new market.
A. professional　　B. traditional　　C. medical　　D. physical

11. Tom Sawyer is a short story_____ by Mark Twain.
A. was written　　B. written　　C. wrote　　D. was writing

12. —Hello! I didn't know you _____ in London. How long have you been here?
—For two months.
A. are　　B. will be
C. have been　　D. were

13. Larry is watching the weather report on TV. The highest temperature of all the cities is _____ .

Shanghai July 24	Lanzhou July 24	Nanjing July 24	Shenyang July 24
Light rain	Sunny	Heavy rain	Cloudy
33°C ~28°C	29°C ~15°C	32°C ~26°C	29°C ~20°C

A. 33℃ in Shanghai　　B. 29℃ in Lanzhou
C. 32℃ in Nanjing　　D. 20℃ in Shenyang

14. The young couple usually don't go downstairs until they _____ all the food in the fridge.
A. run after　　B. run into　　C. run against　　D. run out of

15. On weekends, everything in the supermarket is sold at a 5% _____.
A. account　　B. pay　　C. sale　　D. discount

16. Both Allen and Eric are experienced. You can ask _____ of them for help.
A. any　　B. neither　　C. either　　D. every

17. Jane studies harder than _____ in her group.
A. any student　　B. any other student
C. other student　　D. all the students

18.—Excuse me, _____?

—No, it's direct to Jinan.

A. which bus goes to Jinan　　B. does this bus go to Jinan

C. do I have to change buses　　D. can I go there by bus

19. —Could you tell me _____ during the coming summer vacation?

—I'll go traveling with my parents.

A. what you did　　B. what did you do

C. what you will do　　D. what will you do

20. —_____?

—Hold on, please.

A. Could you tell me the way to the cinema

B. Could you put me through to the manager

C. Would you like some steak

D. Would you like to go fishing with me

专项训练九

1. —Tomorrow will be fine. Shall we go out for a picnic?

—_____.

A. Good luck　　B. Sounds great　　C. Have fun　　D. Take it easy

2. In recent years, great changes _____ in my hometown.

A. taken place　　B. has taken place

C. have taken place　　D. takes place

3. —May I park my car here, sir?

—_____. You see, there's much traffic here.

A. Never mind　　B. Of course not

C. You'd better not　　D. Yes, please

4. —How do you like the child?

—He is lively _____ healthy.

A. as good as　　B. as well as　　C. as much as　　D. as far as

5. We _____ the bus until it stopped.

A. get off　　B. didn't get off　　C. got off　　D. don't get off

6. Davy has gone abroad. Perhaps it will be a long time _____.

A. when he comes back　　B. when he will come back

C. before he comes back　　D. what he comes back

7. —Your dress looks nice on you!

—_____.

A. OK, I'll take it　　B. Yes, please

C. Here you are　　D. Thank you

8. —What is your new boss like?
—He is about average_____ and looks serious.
A. height　　B. flight　　C. weight　　D. fright

9. —I was watching TV when the fire broke out last night. What about you, Lily?
—I _____ computer games.
A. played　　B. have played　　C. had play　　D. was playing

10. —I'm sorry for being late. I wanted to be here earlier, but the traffic was too heavy.
—_____.
A. That's right　　B. Never mind
C. Glad to hear that　　D. Thank you all the same

11. Guilin is a beautiful place. It _____ its mountains and water.
A. was famous as　　B. is famous as
C. was famous for　　D. is famous for

12. —Two hundred yuan for such a T-shirt! You must be joking!
—I'm not joking. It's _____ silk.
A. made up　　B. made of　　C. made up of　　D. made in

13. —I'm leaving now. I want to _____.
—Your name and your room number please?
A. check in　　B. check out　　C. check up　　D. check for

14. Mr. Smith works in a big _____, which sells new computers and mobile phones.
A. cooperation　　B. organization
C. instruction　　D. corporation

15. — How much does it _____ to fly from Beijing to Haikou?
— About 1,000 yuan.
A. cost　　B. pay　　C. spend　　D. take

16. Cathy will buy carnations for her mother and celebrate Mother's Day on_____.



A. May 6th　　B. May 7th　　C. May 13th　　D. May 14th

17. —Mr. Gates became a success after he _____ many difficulties.
—So he did. He is great.
A. broke down　　B. broke into　　C. broke out　　D. broke through

18. We shouldn't _____ hope in face of difficulties.
A. pick up　　B. give up　　C. grow up　　D. set up

19. —Hello. ABC Company. Can I help you?
—Oh, sorry. I _____ have dialed the wrong number.

A. need B. have to C. must D. shall

20. —What makes him_____ in the talent show?

—His quick action and fluent English.

A. stand for B. stand up

C. stand against D. stand out

专项训练十

1. —How about going out for a walk?

— _____.

A. Oh, great. Good idea B. Fine, thank you

C. Congratulations D. With pleasure

2. Mary usually listens to music _____ her spare time.

A. with B. for C. in D. at

3. —Are you ready to order, sir?

—_____

A. No, thanks. B. Yes, sit down please.

C. I'm afraid I have no time. D. Let me look at the menu first.

4. This is one of the most interesting cities _____ I have ever visited.

A. who B. that C. which D. where

5. —What kind of persons do you prefer to make friends with?

—I choose my friends according to their characters and how we _____.

A. get in B. get up C. get off D. get along

6. —I want to borrow the book, but I don't know how long it may _____.

—For two weeks.

A. keep B. be borrowed C. borrow D. be kept

7. —Which do you prefer, a CD player or a Walkman?

—_____. I prefer an MP3.

A. Both B. Either C. Neither D. None

8. The new-designed car is on show now. I wonder_____.

A. how much it cost B. how much it costs

C. how much did it cost D. how much does it cost

9. Body language can help you make yourself easily _____.

A. understand B. understood C. be understood D. understanding

10. —_____?

—It's Sunday.

A. What's the time B. What day is today

C. What's the date today D. What time is it

11. Here is a new book. First_____it and then tell me what you think of it.
A. look into　　B. look up　　C. look through　　D. look after

12. Sometimes, we buy something not because we need it, but because it is _____.
A. for sale　　B. on sale　　C. in detail　　D. by chance

13. —Would you please help me with the large box?
— _____.
A. That's all right　　B. With pleasure
C. No, I don't　　D. Not at all

14. Please add some salt _____ the soup, so that it may taste better.
A. up　　B. into　　C. with　　D. on

15. We students must _____ our time and energy on our studies.
A. attract　　B. control　　C. concentrate　　D. consider

16. —Would you like to go cycling on Sunday morning?
—_____. I haven't been outdoors these days. I can't wait!
A. Sorry, I can't　　B. Sure, I'd love to
C. Not at all　　D. Forget it

17. —How is it going with you?
—_____, and you?
A. All right　　B. Nothing else　　C. Not bad　　D. Never mind

18. Farmers who use the machines can _____ big profit.
A. bring up　　B. bring down　　C. bring in　　D. bring to

19. —What do you do now, Linda?
—I'm a secretary of a large company. I'm always busy _____visitors and incoming mails.
A. meeting with　　B. dealing with
C. helping with　　D. chatting with

20. Steve is searching for information about smart phones on the Net. From the survey chart, he finds that _____.

What kind of smart phone do you use?	
Kinds	Percentage of users (%)
iPhone	32.0
Android	51.4
Blackberry	9.3
Others	7.3

A. Android is the most popular kind
B. more people use iPhones than Android
C. over one third of people use iPhones
D. Blackberry has the fewest users

二、阅读理解

应试技巧

阅读理解能力的测试是英语考试中必不可少的测试项目，主要考查学生对于不同体裁或不同题材语言材料的理解能力，以及通过材料的阅读，对材料中信息的捕获能力。此项能力的测试，考生要做到以下几方面要求：

1．理解所读材料的主旨大意、中心思想，把握文章中的详细事实与细节；

2．了解具体事实情节，理解其抽象含义。既要理解字面意思，又要理解其深层含义，包括作者的态度、观点、意图等；

3．梳理全文的逻辑关系，根据逻辑关系进行判断和推理。

根据以上要求，结合考试说明对英语教学的要求，不难总结出阅读理解题的命题规律及题型结构。一般来说，英语阅读理解题，大致可以分为两类语篇六种题型。

1．应用语篇，包括说明书、广告、价格表等条目型应用文，其特点是类别多、杂。题型设计，大致可以分为四种题型：

（1）事实询问题；

（2）数据推算题；

（3）识图解意题；

（4）主旨大意题。（多为判断该应用文的用途）

2．叙事性文字语篇，有一定的故事情节或线索可循。题型设计，也可以分为四种题型：

（1）事实询问题；

（2）推理判断题；

（3）主旨大意题；

（4）常识题。

如何才能做好阅读理解题呢？在阅读理解中，要准确地把握主要事实或情节，理顺它们之间的关系，找出与事实或情节发展密切相关的词语，为正确地判断打下基础。具体可分为：

① 通篇阅读，掌握大意。

首先通读全文，找出短文中的主题句和概括性语段，以把握全文脉络和中心思想。概括性的语段经常出现在首段或末段，主题句可能出现在段首、段中或段末。

② 审读题目，进行判断或选择。

读懂短文内容后再审读题目，通过寻读法在原文中找出与每个问题相关的段落与词句，然后依据短文内容对问题进行逐句细读，认真推敲，做出选择或者是非判断。常用

的阅读方法有：细读与略读并举。语篇中的重点难点应仔细分析、揣摩，尤其是体现语篇的大意，暗示作者写作意图之处，应仔细阅读，其余篇幅略读；跳读与查读并举。在问题的驱使下，略过那些与本问题无关的句段，直接搜寻与该问题有联系之处。如查阅人名、地名、年代、数据等。

③ 复读全文，验证答案。

在完成所有的问题后，要复读短文核对答案，加深对短文的理解，在此基础上再对每一问题进行复查，对似是而非的句子，一定要重新认真识别。

④ 不同的题型要区别对待。

阅读理解选择题型注意以下几点：

① 各小题所提供的四个选项，有的是语法、结构上有错误，有的是与短文的意思不符。解题时要把结构、语法错误先排除，再考虑是否符合短文内容。

② 对涉及文中某个词或句子的含义的选项要根据构词法及上下文内在逻辑关系，进行猜测推理，去伪存真选出正确答案。

③ 对于涉及文章主旨、大意、作者意图及文章标题等选项，要统观全文，通过短文所提供的材料或学过的知识加以综合理解、分析推理或按照作者的思路推理，从而推断出正确答案。

④ 阅读的顺序一般是先读短文，再看题目，但是如果文章较长，也可以先将测试题浏览一遍，然后带着问题阅读。这样对与问题有关的段落、句子反应敏感，可以加快阅读速度。

⑤ 对于条目型应用文，首先应分清各条目的内容及相互关系，再结合问题要求，迅速找到相关信息。

案例分析

阅读下面短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案

Do you know what couch-potato means? Well, in America, the word is now often used. The American couch-potato becomes maybe even a part of the American tradition! You see, in America, many people often spend their free time sitting on a couch watching TV. As there are many channels to choose, the TV can be quite interesting and very addictive. One may sit and watch TV for hours and hours without stop! Well, these people who do nothing all day except watching TV are called couch-potatoes.

In America, when one watches TV, one is most often sitting on a couch.

While watching TV, most of these people look so frozen that they almost look like dead things! Everyone is sitting still with eyes looking right into the same black box. Also because these people are addictive to TV, they don't take exercise and usually get very fat. So in many ways, these people look like real potatoes! Well, because they look so still and fat, and watch TV on a couch, they are all called couch-potatoes. Now that you know what a couch-potato means, the next time if you see someone watching TV too long, just say, "What a

couch-potato!”

1. The word “couch-potato” is often used in _____.

A. China B. America C. Japan D. France

2. If a person is called a couch-potato, he or she _____.

A. likes sitting on a couch and watching TV

B. does nothing all day except taking exercise

C. must be very lazy

D. only watches TV in his free time

3. Why does a couch-potato look like a real potato? Because he or she _____.

A. almost never moves while watching TV and gets very fat

B. is fat and dying and can not take exercise

C. likes eating potatoes on a couch while watching TV

D. is frozen in front of the black box

4. The passage mainly tells us _____.

A. how to watch TV B. why couch-potatoes are very fat

C. what couch-potato means D. where the new word is used

5. Which of the followings should be the writer’s suggestion? _____.

A. Take more exercise B. Never watch TV

C. Don’t sit on a couch D. Don’t watch TV too much

答案：1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. D

1．第一段前两句明确指出, coach-potato 是用于美国，所以选 B。

2．从第一段 “Many people often spend their free time sitting on a couch watching TV” 和第二段的描述中我们可以看出被称作 “couch-potato”的人喜欢坐在沙发上看电视，所以答案 A 是正确的。

3．从第二段第四、五句 “they don’t take exercise and usually get very fat. So in many ways, these people look like real potatoes!” 可以得知答案 A 正确。

4．从第一句就可以推断，短文的主题是关于：What does coach potato mean?, 而且读完后，纵观全文，发现就是这个话题，所以选 C。

5．从整个短文来看，作者对 coach-potato 这种人不赞赏，因为他们：like sitting on a coach, almost never moves while watching TV and gets very fat. 所以他建议：Don’t watch TV too much. 所以选 D。

专项训练

A

Personal Information

Name: Wang Liang

Address: Block2, 10th Floor, Happy Garden Jinan

Telephone: 85641169(Home), 85437829(Office)
Date of birth: 17 April, 1983
Place of birth: Qingdao
ID No: _____

Education and Qualifications

9/2000—7/2003: High Secretarial College
Distinctions（优秀）in typing, shorthand（速记）, and secretarial skills
International Secretarial Certificate（国际秘书证书）

9/1997—7/2000: No.1 Vocational High School, Credits（优等）in English, Chinese, and passes in Geography, Mathematics and History

9/1994—7/1997: No.303Middle School

Experience

9/2003—present: Sanlian Co Ltd working as a full-time receptionist and typist
Date available: Three months from present
Award: First Prize in a typing skill contest
Hobbies: Swimming
Languages: Chinese, English

1. Where was Wang Liang born?
A. Jinan.　B. Qingdao.　C. Dongying.　D. Taian.

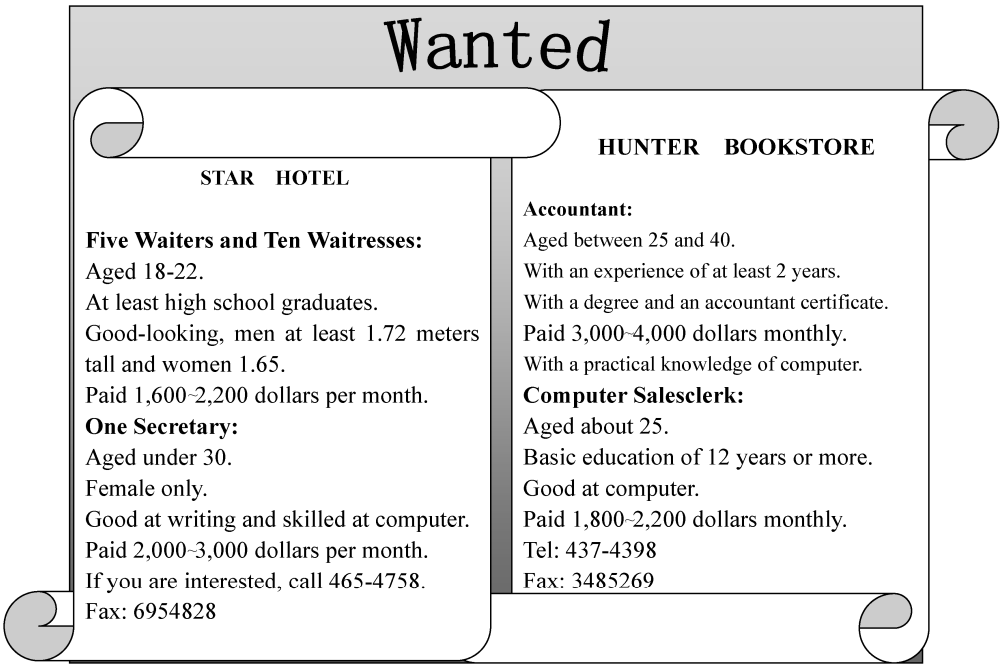
2. Wang Liang worked as a(an)_____.
A. receptionist and typist　B. accountant
C. CEO　D. section manager

3. When did Wang Liang graduate from the college?
A. In 2002.　B. In 2000.　C. In 2003.　D. In 1997.

4. Which of the following is not true according to the passage?
A. Wang Liang likes swimming.
B. Wang Liang is good at Chinese and English.
C. Wang Liang won the prize in a shorthand skill contest.
D. Wang Liang studied in No.303 Middle School in 1995.

5. The passage is mainly about Wang Liang's _____.
A. experience　B. education　C. hometown　D. resume

B



1. If you don't know how to use a computer, you can work as _____.

A. a secretary　　B. a waiter or waitress

C. an accountant　　D. a salesclerk

2. If you want to find a job in Star Hotel, you should be _____.

A. a woman　　B. a university graduate

C. shorter than 1.65 meters　　D. younger than 30 years old

3. If you work as a secretary, how much can you get at most monthly?

A. $ 1,800.　　B. $2,200.　　C. $ 3,000.　　D. $4,000.

4. If you want to be an accountant, you have to satisfy the following conditions except _____.

A. being a woman　　B. knowing how to use a computer well

C. an experience of at least 2 years　　D. having an accountant certificate

5. Steve is 24 years old. He can apply for the job as _____.

A. a secretary　　B. a waiter

C. an accountant　　D. a computer salesclerk

C

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">GOING OUT OF BUSINESS
BARGAINS !BARGAINS !THE SHOE BOX FINAL CLEARANCE</td></tr>
<tr><td>ALL WOMEN'S SHOES
Now
Orig. to $10.00 $ 6.00
$10.01 to $17.99 $8.00
$18.00 up $12.00</td><td>LAST 10 DAYS
SALE HOURS DAILY
9:30AM—9:00PM

Sunday 11:00am to 4:00pm</td><td>ALL CHILDREN'S SHOES
Now
Orig. to $ 9.00 $ 5.00
$9.01 to $17.99 $ 8.00
$18.00 up $12.00</td></tr>
<tr><td>ALL SPORTS SHOES
Now 40% OFF</td><td>ALL SLIPPERS
NOW 50% OFF</td><td>MEN & WOMEN'S COTTON SHOES
50% OFF</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">FREE PARKING</td><td>LIC.NO 6888</td></tr>
</table>

1. How much is a pair of women's shoes that used to be $ 10?
 A. $ 6.00.　B. $8.00.　C. $12.00.　D. $18.00.
2. What does "**LAST 10 DAYS**"mean?
 A. The sale was over 10 days ago.
 B. There was a sale 10 days ago.
 C. The sale will last for 10 days.
 D. The sale is over.
3. The word "DAILY" here means "_____."
 A. every Sunday　B. every day except Sunday
 C. during the daytime　D. ten days
4. What hours is the sale on Sunday?
 A. 9:00 am—9:30 pm　B. 9:30 am—9:00 pm
 C. 11:00 am—4:00 pm　D. 4:00 am—11:00 pm
5. What is the reason for the sale?
 A. The store is going out of business.
 B. People don't like shoes.
 C. The store is just starting business.
 D. The store is selling books.

D

shoot/ʃu: t/ noun, verb ⊿noun plant A new part that grows on plants or trees. ⊿Verb (shot, shot/ʃɔt/) to hunt and kill birds and animals with a gun as a sport	ignore/ig′nɔ:(r)/verb (ignored, ignored) to pay no attention to something ⊙I made a suggestion but they ignored it. ignorance/′ignərəns/ noun ignorant/′ignərənt/ adj.
valuable /′væljəubl/ adj. of great importance, use, service ⊙He is a valuable partner. value /′vælju:/ noun, verb	resource /ri′sɔ:s/noun〔c. usually pl.〕something that a country, an organization or a person has and can use ⊙America is rich in natural resources.

1. Which of the following words is the first in alphabetical order in a dictionary?
 A. shoot B. ignore C. valuable D. resource
2. The pronunciation of the word “resource” is _____.
 A. /r i′sɔ:s/ B. /ʃu: t/ C. /′ignərəns/ D. /′væljəubl/
3. What is the past form of the word “shoot”?
 A. shooted B. shot C. shoot D. shooting
4. Which sentence is wrong after learning these words in the dictionary?
 A. Canada is rich in water resource.
 B. This is a valuable decision.
 C. He ignorance the doctor’s advice.
 D. He used to shoot wild animals.
5. We cannot know about _____ of a word in the dictionary.
 A. phonetics B. the meaning of Chinese
 C. the part of speech D. spelling

E

Greta and her family like to go skiing. Their favorite place to ski is Big Mountain Ski Resort Centre. This year, Greta took her friend Carmen to go skiing. Carmen had never skied before, so she didn’t have her own ski equipment. Greta took Carmen to the Big Mountain Ski Shop. There, Carmen rented all the things that she needed for skiing.

BIG MOUNTAION SKI SHOP

Skis

	Full Day—8 hours	Half Day—4 hours
Skis	$ 15	$ 10
Boots	$ 20	$ 15
Poles	$ 10	$ 5

Snowboard

	Full Day only
Board	$ 25
Boots	$ 20

Ski and Snowboard Lessons

Beginner (group lesson) $ 10 per hour

Advanced (private lesson) $ 20 per hour

Welcome to Big Mountain Ski Resort Centre! Have a good time!

1. If she rented only boots and skis for a full day, Carmen would pay _____.

A. $ 45　　B. $ 20　　C. $ 35　　D. $ 55

2. The underlined word **equipment** means _____.

A. 器材　　B. 教练　　C. 服装　　D. 摄影

3. Can Carmen rent the snowboard only for 4 hours?

A. Yes, she can.　　B. No, she can't　　C. Maybe.　　D. It isn't mentioned

4. If Carmen have Ski and Snowboard lessons for two hours, she need to pay _____.

A. $ 10　　B. $ 20　　C. $ 30　　D. $ 40

5. Carmen may see the table(表格) above _____.

A. on TV　　B. on the wall of the shop

C. in the newspaper　　D. on the Internet

F

Trip 1　One Week in The Mountains

Bring your strong shoes and warm clothes for this walk in a beautiful area of the Green Mountains. You may go hiking or have a try of rock climbing. This is also a protection area for wild animals. You can find many kinds of animals living in this area.

Time: May 8—May 14　　Tel: 64639818

Adult: $1l0.00　　Child: $55.00

Trip 2 Three Days In The Country

There are many beautiful gardens. Take your camera and enjoy the wonderful sight in Hunter Valley. It is a good place for fishing and horse riding. You can also find different kinds of flowers here. This is also a great walk for bird-lovers.

Time: May 20—May 22 Tel: 63986432

Adult: $55.00 Child: $25.00

Trip 3 Flashlight Adventure

Put on your warm clothes, bring a flashlight (手电筒) and come for a night walk along the Dungog Valley. It is a trip full of adventure (冒险). A guide will lead the tour. Many of the plants you will see on this trip can only be seen at night.

Time: May 16—May 18 Tel: 63875629

Adult: $30.00 Not for children

Trip 4 Five Days By The Sea

Wear your sun hat and enjoy wonderful sunshine all the time from morning to evening. Our hotel is next to the sea. We have our own boats too. You can swim in the sea or in the swimming pool. Every day our boat will take you to different places for swimming.

Time: May 23—May 27 Tel: 67538293

Adult: $80.00 Child: $40.00

1. What number may you call if you and your friends want to enjoy the sunshine at the seaside?

A. 67538293. B. 63986432. C. 64639818. D. 63875629.

2. Sam wants to stay in Hunter Valley with his wife, his five-year-old daughter and his seven-year-old son. How much will it cost?

A. $25. B. $50. C. $l00. D. $160.

3. David loves sports. He will take his holiday from May 7 to May 15. What activity will he probably take part in?

A. Hiking in the mountains. C. Watching plants at night.

B. Fishing in the country. D. Swimming in the sea.

4. Lucy is a college student. She is quite interested in science. She wants to know something about the life of plants at night. Which trip will she choose?

A. Trip 1. B. Trip 2. C. Trip 3. D. Trip 4.

5. Which of the following is NOT mentioned according to the four advertisements?

A. Sun hat. B. Warm clothes. C. Umbrella. D. Camera.

G

Sydney Tower

Address:100 Market Street, Sydney

Phone: 02 9333 9222

Fax: 02 9333 9203

Open time: 9:00 am to 10:30 pm (Saturdays to 11:30 pm)

Ticket: $60 (for an adult)

$30 (for a child)

Website: www.sydneytower.com.au

How to get there: train to Town Hall Station and a short walk along Market Street

How to book tickets: by phone/fax or through the web

Attraction: Sydney's best views are just the beginning! Sydney Tower takes you to the highest point above Sydney for exciting 360° views of our beautiful city.

1. Sydney Tower is _____ in Sydney, Australia.

A. the busiest street　　B. the biggest station

C. the most beautiful park　　D. the highest point

2. If you want to book a ticket to Sydney Tower, you can't _____.

A. email sydneytower@hotmail.com

B. fax 02 9333 9203

C. search www.sydneytower.com.au

D. dial 02 9333 9222

3. Frank wants to go to Sydney Tower with his two children, he will pay_____.

A. $60　　B. $90

C. $120　　D. $150

4. Last Saturday, Johnson went to visit Sydney Tower. He had to get down the tower _____.

A. after 11:30 pm　　B. before 11:30 pm

C. at 10:30 pm　　D. by 10:30 pm

5. The passage above is probably _____.

A. a piece of news　　B. a conversation

C. a story　　D. an advertisement

H

THE TAJ 100 years of pictures THEN AND NOW See the Taj in history from1900 to 2000 Photography Show City Art Museum 720 High Street Tuesday to Sunday 10 a.m. to 5 pm	AFRICAN SAFARI PARK A Drive-through Zoo Drive in your own car or take the special train. See lions, elephants, tigers without cages. Open every day 9:00—16:00 Special tickets $35 for 4 people
BELL TOWER TRIPS Great scenery from the top! Climb 439 steps or take the lift. Learn the 300-year history of our city Sundays only 8 a.m.to 3 p.m. No children under 5.	HARRY POTTER MAGIC SHOW See magic performances • The quiet bell • The clever boy • The terrible message Two full hours Saturday morning Starts at 9:30 The Grand Cinema 741 High Street

1. We can go to see the Taj pictures at _____ on Sunday.
 A. 3pm B. 8am
 C. 6pm D. 7am
2. If eight students go to see animals in the zoo on Sunday, they should pay _____.
 A. $105 B. $140
 C. $35 D. $70
3. Children under _____ are not allowed to go to Bell Tower.
 A. 5 B.6
 C. 7 D. 8
4. If Sam wants to see magic performances, he may go to _____ to enjoy them.
 A. City Art Museum B. the Grand Cinema
 C. African Safari Park D. Bell Tower
5. Which of the following is true according to the passage?
 A. On Saturday morning the magic performance Harry Potter may end at 11:30.
 B. You can only take the lift to the top of Bell Tower.
 C. You can see the lions in cages in African Safari Park.
 D. On Monday you can see the Taj in history in City Art Museum.

I

An Inviting Advertisement of Summer School

We are a bilingual (双语) school for children of 6~14. We want a cook, a library assistant, a sports coach and a language teacher.

Job	Age	Language	Skill	Other terms
cook	25~40	Chinese	can cook Chinese and Western food	healthy
library assistant	20~35	Chinese, English	has the knowledge on different kinds of books	careful
sports coach	20~40	Chinese, English	major in physical education	healthy, strong
teacher	…	Chinese, English	major in English	

1. Who can't go to Summer School?

A. A four-year-old child.　　B. An eleven-year-old boy.

C. A fourteen-year-old girl.　　D. An eight-year-old boy.

2. Who is not wanted by Summer School?

A. A cook.　　B. A headmaster.

C. A library assistant.　　D. A language teacher.

3. Who may not speak English?

A. The language teacher.　　B. The library assistant.

C. The cook.　　D. The sports coach.

4. The coach must major in _____.

A. Chinese　　B. English

C. physical education　　D. food

5. What is needed as a teacher?

A. Age between 25 and 40.

B. He can cook western food.

C. He should be able to speak Chinese and English.

D. He should be strong and healthy.

J

April Hot SALE @Nobel Book Store!

To celebrate our 30th birthday, we are having a big sale!

Children's books	**Text book**	**Picture book**	**Story book**
	25% off	30% off	20% off
20% discount on all adults' books!			

Amazing events in our birthday month:

Time & Place	Event	Speaker
25 April, 4 pm Fanta Centre, 3F	Introduction: The School Diaries	Claire Tay, writer of the book
26 April, 1pm Retro Mall, 2F	Discussion : How to improve through reading	Michael Hawes, English professor
28 April,7pm Winkle Mall, 1F	Lecture: The most popular books of the year	David Koh, director of the book store
29 April, 8pm Fanta Centre, 3F	Question & Answer: Face to face with a renowned writer	Kate White, winner of many international awards

Spend over $50 and get a chance to win a $10 gift card.

Spend over $100 and get a chance to win prizes, from Nobel membership, e-dictionaries to concert tickets!

1. April is the birthday months of _____.
 A. Nobel Book Store　　B. Fanta Centre
 C. Retro Mall　　D. Winkle Mall
2. You can get the biggest discount on _____.
 A. adult's story books　　B. all magazines
 C. children's picture books　　D. all textbooks
3. _____will help you know more about the most popular books this year.
 A. Claire Tay　　B. Michael Hawes
 C. David Koh　　D. Kate White
4. If you spend $65, you will get a chance to win _____.
 A. an e-dictionary　　B. a $10 gift card
 C. Noble membership　　D. a concert gift

5. The main purpose of the advisement is to _____.
 A. find excellent writers
 B. attract more book buyers
 C. celebrate Children's Day
 D. introduce new reading courses

K

The designer of the Apple Computer, Steve Jobs, was not quite successful in his early years. He was not among the best students at school, and from time to time he got into trouble with either his schoolmates or his teachers. But he was full of new ideas, which few people saw the value of. Things remained the same when he went up to college and he dropped out halfway.

Steve Jobs worked first as a video game designer at Atari. He worked there for only a few months and then he set out to tour India. He hoped that the trip would give him more ideas and give him a change in life for the better.

After he returned from India, he began to live on a farm in California. And then, in 1975, Steve Jobs set about making a new type of computer. Along with his friend Stephen Wozniak, he designed the Apple Computer in his bedroom and built it in his garage. He used the name "Apple" because it reminded him of a happy summer he once spent on an orchard (果园) in Oregon.

His Apple Computer was so successful that Steve Jobs soon became worldwide famous. But unluckily, he died of illness in 2011.

1. Steve Jobs _____ when he was in school.
 A. was an outstanding student　　B. didn't do very well
 C. was always praised by others　　D. didn't learn anything
2. The underlined word "value" means _____.
 A. beauty　　B. chance　　C. importance　　D. hope
3. Steve Jobs _____.
 A. received excellent college education
 B. didn't go to college at all
 C. studied in college for four years
 D. didn't finish his college education
4. Steve Jobs named his computer company "Apple" because _____.
 A. apple was his favorite fruit
 B. he designed the computer under an apple tree
 C. he wanted to remember the happy time on the orchard
 D. the computer was designed on the orchard
5. Steve Jobs' _____ would be the most important thing for his lifetime success.

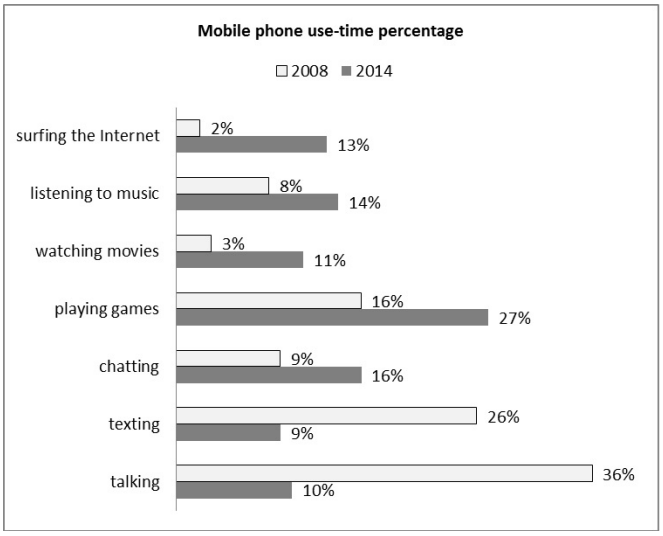
A. "failure" in school B. stay on the orchard

C. travel to India D. new ideas

L

Mobile phones are more important than ever in the daily lives of students, but how they use them has changed greatly in the past six years. While phones are still widely used for communication, a recent study has found that most students think talking on mobile phones is old-fashioned.

London University researchers surveyed 1055 young people aged 15 to 18 about their mobile phone habits. The researchers divided mobile use into "communication" and "entertainment". Communication includes talking on the phone and writing messages using texting or chatting software. Entertainment is made up of playing games, watching movies, listening to music and surfing the Internet. The findings were then compared to a 2008 study to see what changed. The results are shown below:



1. What was the most popular mobile phone activity in 2014?

A. Talking. B. Texting. C. Playing games D. Watching games.

2. Which of the following is true about watching movies on mobile phones?

A. It has increased most over the past six years.

B. 14% of the students now watch movies on their mobile phones.

C. It was the most popular type of mobile phone entertainment in 2008.

D. Students spend more time watching movies than talking on their phones in 2014.

3. In total, what percentage of time did students use their mobile phones for communication in 2008?

A. 16% B. 28% C. 35% D. 71%

4. Which mobile phone activities were more popular than surfing the Internet in 2014?

A. Chatting and watching movies.
B. Chatting and listening to music.
C. Playing games and watching movies.
D. Playing games and texting.

5. The passage can be best described as a(n) _____.
A. report　　B. story　　C. advertisement　　D. argument

M

Choosing which university to go to is one of the biggest and most expensive decisions you'll have to make. Here are some things to consider.

● Work out whether you want to study at home or abroad. If you're going abroad, first you have to think of the cost of your study, living expenses and the flight tickets.

● Decide which courses interest you and find out more about who will teach the course. Try to collect information from past students.

● Check out the ability of the teachers. Study the key subjects in the course and compare them with the ones from other universities.

● Find out if the university offers work for practice or exchange programs for the course you're interested in.

● Check what the university's policy (政策) is for switching (转换) courses in the university or changing universities.

● Many universities now have websites. Use them as a chance to ask the universities all the questions you want.

● Visit education exhibitions. You'll be able to find out more by talking to teachers from different universities, and they can be found easily at the same time.

● Go to see the university if you can. If this is not possible because of the cost, do some research and find out where the university is as well as the environment around it. It shouldn't be too hard to do that with programs like Google Maps.

1. How many suggestions are mentioned in the passage?
A. Six.　　B. Seven.　　C. Eight.　　D. Nine.

2. According to the passage, if you're going to study abroad, what should you do first?
A. Think of the cost.　　B. Find out a university.
C. Choose the course.　　D. Check the teachers' ability.

3. Which is the easiest way to get to know different universities?
A. Check the website.　　B. Visit education exhibitions.
C. Use Google Maps.　　D. Go to see the universities.

4. The passage is written for _____.
A. primary school students　　B. high school students
C. people out of jobs　　D. people looking for jobs

5. What does the passage mainly talk about?

A. Qualities of a good university.

B. Ways to achieve your goals.

C. Advice on choosing a university.

D. Factors influencing your choice.

N

In England a woman fell down a stair. Panic (惊慌) followed—178 persons lost their lives. In Michigan a woman fell ill. There was a call for water. Someone thought it meant fire—71 were killed. In Oklahoma an old man's hair caught fire—36 died.

What should you do to be out of danger?

● As you sit in any crowd, pick out an exit which is not the one where most persons enter and plan to use if necessary.

● If a rush starts, do not get into it. Stay still. Let it pass. Then go to the exit you have chosen.

● Do not cry out. Speak quietly. Act calmly.

● Do not stop for your hat and coat unless they are at hand.

● If there is smoke, crouch. The best air is about three feet above the floor.

● When you are outside the building, stay out. Many dead would be alive if they had not returned for something.

● When you get out, move far from the door so others can get out.

1. The first paragraph tells us that over two hundred people lost their lives because of _____.

A. a fire B. a call for water C. falling downstairs D. panic

2. If you are in a crowd when panic starts, you should _____.

A. run with the others. B. call for help as loudly as you can

C. hurry to an exit D. stay still until the crowd has passed

3. If there is smoke, you should _____.

A. stay still B. cry out C. crouch D. speak quietly

4. Once out of a place where there is panic, you should _____.

A. stay outside B. go back for your wallet

C. return to ask people not to run D. stand near the exit

5. When you are safe outside a burning building, stay away from the door so that _____.

A. the smoke can get out B. you will not get burned

C. others may leave D. others may enter

O

China is a large country with profound culture.

Beijing opera

With a history of about 200 years, Beijing opera is a perfect combination of music, performance, mime and dance, which is favored by people domestic and abroad. Beijing opera is originated in Beijing around 1840. Now Beijing opera has become one of the largest influential opera form in the world.

Chinese Kung Fu

Chinese Kung Fu, also known as Wushu, is a traditional sport item in ancient China, which is a perfect combination of exercise, self-defense and has become a great component of Chinese culture. It has been flouring since the foundation of People's Republic of China.

Chinese Tea Culture

Chinese tea culture is the culture of making tea and drinking tea in China, which is different from that of Europe, Britain and Japan. China is home to many kinds of tea, from Green Tea, Black Tea, to White Tea and Yellow Tea. In China, drinking tea is usually referred as tasting tea, which not only means distinguishing the quality of tea, but also enjoying the life.

1. Which is not mentioned in the passage?
 A. Beijing Opera.　　B. Chinese Wushu
 C. Chinese tea　　D. The Great Wall
2. _____ is not included in Beijing Opera.
 A. Music　　B. Performance　　C. Dance　　D. Action
3. Chinese tea includes _____ according to the passage.
 A. Green Tea, White Tea, Black Tea and Yellow Tea
 B. Green Tea, Black Tea, Blue Tea and Yellow Tea
 C. Green Tea, Black Tea, White Tea and Red Tea
 D. Green Tea, Red Tea, colorful Tea and Yellow Tea
4. From the passage, we can know _____.
 A. Chinese tea culture is the same as that in Britain
 B. people who have Chinese Kung Fu can keep healthy and protect themselves
 C. Beijing Opera started about 1840 years ago
 D. Chinese tea culture is only drinking tea
5. Which is the proper title for the passage?
 A. Chinese Tea Culture　　B. Chinese Opera
 C. Chinese Culture　　D. A large Country

P

Want to stay away from colds? Put on a happy face. Compared with unhappy people, those who are cheerful and relaxed are less likely to suffer from colds, according to a new study. It's possible that being happy helps the body fight illnesses, say the researchers from New York University.

"It seems that positive feelings may reduce the danger of illness," said the study's chief researcher Sheldon Cohen. In an earlier study, Cohen found that people who were cheerful and lively caught coughs and colds less often. People who showed positive feelings were also less likely to tell their doctors that they fell ill.

In this study, Cohen's interviewed 193 adults every day for two weeks. During the interviews, the people told researchers about the happy or the sad feelings they had that day. After the two weeks, the people were given colds by doctors and had to stay alone in a room for six days.

The results showed that everyone in the study was equally likely to get ill. But for people who said they felt happy during the research period, their illnesses were less serious and lasted for a shorter time.

Cohen believes that when people experience positive feelings, their body may produce a chemical that helps fight illness and disease. So if you are worried about your health, look on the bright side more often.

1. Which of the following was NOT a part of the study?
 A. People talked about their feelings every day.
 B. People were kept alone for six days.
 C. People were given colds by doctors.
 D. People were made to feel unhappy.
2. What did the study find?
 A. People who felt happy never got ill.
 B. People's feelings didn't influence their health.
 C. People with good feelings became ill more easily.
 D. People with positive feelings had less serious illnesses.
3. According to Cohen, which of the following may help fight illness?
 A. Eating. B. Crying. C. Laughing. D. Sleeping.
4. This passage is a(n) _____.
 A. advertisement B. newspaper report
 C. story D. scientist's diary
5. What is the best title for this passage?
 A. Smiles can fight colds
 B. Cause of colds found
 C. The danger of colds
 D. How people get sick

Q

Our village carpenter (木匠) , John, came one day and made a dining table for my wife. He made it just the right size for the space between the two windows. When I got home

that evening, John was drinking a cup of tea and writing out his bill for the job.

My wife said to me quietly, "That's his ninth cup of tea today." But she said, in a loud voice, "It's a beautiful table, dear, isn't it？"

"I'll decide about that when I see the bill." I said.

John laughed and gave me his bill for the work．I read:

One dining table	*10 November, 1998*
Cost of wood	*$17.00*
Paint	*$1.50*
Work, 8 hours ($1 an hour)	*$8.00*
Total	*$36.50*

When I was looking at the bill, John said, "It's been a nice day, hasn't it？Quite sunny."

"Yes." I said. " I'm glad it's only the tenth of November."

"Me, too." Said John．"You wait — it'll be a lot colder by the end of the month."

"Yes, colder — and more expensive! A dining table will be $20 more expensive on November 30, won't it, John?"

John looked hard at me for half a minute. Was there a little smile in his two blue eyes？I gave his bill back to him.

"If there isn't too much trouble, John," I said, "please add it up again．You can forget the date…"

I paid him $26.50 and he was happy to get it.

1. Why did John talk about the weather when the writer was looking at the bill？

A. Because he didn't want the writer to go through the bill carefully.

B. Because it was really a fine day.

C. Because he wanted the writer to check the bill carefully.

D. Because he wanted to tell the writer what the weather was like.

2. The writer thought John would ask for _____ if he made a dining table on the last day of November.

A. $20.00　　B. $46.50　　C. $56.50　　D. $26.50

3. When the writer gave John the money, he was happy because _____.

A. he got what he should get for his work

B. he got much more money for his work

C. he got the money easily

D. he didn't have to add up the costs again

4. From the story we know that _____.

A. John made a mistake in the bill

B. John tried to fool the writer in order to get more money for his work

C. John had written out the bill before the writer got home

D. John still wanted to get $36.50 for his work in the end

5. What do you think of the writer? He is _____.

A. honest B. clever C. foolish D. afraid

R

You may know about "junk food" like French fries. But do you know about "junk sleep"?

Recently, a British survey found that electronic(电子) products in teenagers bedrooms are affecting(影响)their sleep.

The survey was done among 1,000 British kids from 12 to 16. It found that thirty percent of them got just 4 to 7 hours sleep every day. But doctors say they need 8 to 9 hours.

Almost a quarter of the kids said they fell asleep more than once a week while watching TV, listening to music or using other electronic products.

"This is very worrying." Said Dr. Chris Idzkowski, a British expert, "We call it 'junk sleep'. It means you don't get enough sleep and the quality of the sleep is bad, too. If you don't get good rest, you don't perform well in school the next day."

The survey found that 40 percent of the kids felt tired each day, with girls between 13 and 16 feeling the worst. Nearly all the teenagers have a phone, Mp4 or TV in their bedroom. And many of them have all three.

1. This passage is mainly about_____.

A. junk food B. junk sleep

C. electronic products D. the importance of sleep

2. _____of the children in the survey sleep only 4 to 7 hours a day.

A. 200 B. 300 C. 500 D. 1,000

3. "Junk food" and "junk sleep" are similar to each other in the way that_____.

A. they are both low in quality B. they are both produced in factories

C. people enjoy both in their spare time D. they are both good to people's health

4. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?

A. Teenagers need 4 to 7 hours of sleep each day.

B. Few of the teenagers have a phone in their bedrooms.

C. Teenagers spend too much time on electronic products.

D. Girls between 15 and 16 spend the least time on electronic products.

5. Which of the following is the best solution to the problem?

A. Parents watch TV together with their children.

B. Forbid teenagers to use any electronic product.

C. Teenagers limit their use of the electronic products.

D. The use of mobile phone and Mp4 is not allowed at school

S

Height is just one of the features your genes (基因) decide. In fact, because you have two parents, your genes provide you a height that usually lands somewhere between the height of each parent. If both your parents are tall, then most probably you will be tall, too. But if you

have questions about how tall you're going to be, ask your doctor if he or she can help you find them out.

But genes don't decide everything. For example, eating an unhealthy diet can keep you from growing to your full potential (潜力). Getting plenty of sleep and enough exercise will help you grow to the expected height.

It's natural that you're wondering how fast you should grow. There's no perfect or right answer. Generally speaking, kids grow about 6 cm a year between age 3 and the time when they start puberty.

Your doctor will know how your growth has been going over the years. 2 cm here and 3 cm there make a little difference to the height you're at now. How have you been growing up to this height? What other changes may your body be going through?

Don't be amazed if you seem to have grown a lot in a very short time. Everyone has a growth spurt (高峰) during puberty. The age for starting puberty is about 10 for girls and about 11 for boys. But it can be earlier or later — between 7 and 13 for girls and 9 and 15 for boys.

You'll usually begin to notice that you're growing faster about a year after your body starts to show the first changes of puberty.

1. If you want to know how tall you should grow, _____.

A. you should have enough exercise

B. you can ask doctors for help

C. you should take some special medicine

D. you can record your growth during puberty

2. The Chinese for the word " puberty " is _____.

A. 童年时期　　B. 婴幼儿时期

C. 习惯养成期　　D. 生长发育

3. After reading this passage, we can explain _____.

A. how good it is to be a doctor

B. how much sleep time we need

C. why genes can't decide everything

D. what healthy diet is

4. Which is NOT mentioned in the passage?

A. Your height most probably depends on how tall your parents are.

B. Girls' age for starting puberty is usually earlier than that for boys'.

C. The features showing the first changes of puberty between boys and girls are different.

D. You may be amazed sometimes when you grow too fast.

5. This passage is mainly about _____.

A. how the genes work in your body

B. how your parents' height influence you

C. how you look like your parents

D. how you grow to a certain height

T

Healthy eating doesn't just mean what you eat, but how you eat. Here is some advice on healthy eating.

Eat with others. It can help you to see others' healthy eating habits. If you usually eat with your parents, you will find that the food you eat is more delicious.

Listen to your body. Ask yourself if you are really hungry. Have a glass of water to see if you are thirsty——sometimes you are just thirsty; you need no food. Stop eating before you feel full.

Eat breakfast. Breakfast is the most important meal of the day. After you don't eat for the past ten hours, your body needs food to get you going. You will be smarter after eating breakfast.

Eat healthy snacks like fruits, yogurt or cheese. You all need snacks sometimes. In fact, it's a good idea to eat two healthy snacks between your three meals. This doesn't mean that you can eat a bag of chips instead of a meal.

Don't eat dinner late. With our busy life, we always put off eating dinner until the last minute. Try to eat dinner at least 3 hours before you go to bed. This will give your body a chance to digest most of the food before you rest for the next 8-10 hours.

1. The writer gives us _____ pieces of advice on healthy eating.
 A. 4 B. 5 C. 6 D. 7
2. Which snack is not mentioned in the passage?
 A. Fruits. B. Yogurt. C. Chips. D. Ice cream.
3. The underlined word "digest" means " _____" in Chinese.
 A. 消化 B. 享用 C. 存储 D. 循环
4. Which of the following is true according to the passage?
 A. Snacks are bad for our health.
 B. We should keep eating until we are full.
 C. Dinner is the most important meal of the day.
 D. We should have dinner at least 3 hours before going to bed.
5. The passage mainly tells us _____.
 A. where to eat B. how to eat C. why to eat D. when to eat

三、短文填空

应试技巧

短文填词的测试主要考查学生单词拼写、语言基础知识、语篇理解能力和语言表达能力。考生要做到以下几方面要求：

（1）通读全文，弄清短文大意。

解答此类题时，我们应该先越过空格，通读全文，通过我们掌握的基本知识和逻辑思维，了解文章的大意，理清文章的脉络，同时还要注意某些与空格有关的关键信息

（2）复读短文，运用以下技巧，前后照应，确定答案。

① 根据句子的语法结构判断所填词是什么词类

② 根据上下文意思判断应该要填写的单词

③根据上下文判断所填写单词的形式（名词涉及单复数；动词涉及时态、语态、非谓语动词等；形容词和副词涉及比较级等；数词涉及基数词和序数词等）

④要注意某些固定搭配和结构

（3）复读检验，消除疏漏。

答案基本确定后，我们还要再次阅读全文，认真检查是否存在疏漏，意义是否连贯，语法是否正确，是否符合逻辑，是否存在拼写错误等。

案例分析

阅读短文，根据短文内容在空白处填入适当的内容（每空一词），或括号内单词的正确形式，或首字母，或汉语提示填写内容。

Most people want to be happy, but few know how to find happiness. Money and (1)_____(成功) alone don't bring happiness. Happiness depends on (2) _____ (we). Here (3) _____ (be) a few secrets to help you be happier.

The first secret of happiness is to enjoy the simple things in life, such (4) _____ spending time with close friends, listening to your (5) f_____ music, or reading a good book. People (6) _____ have close friends often enjoy happier and (7) _____ (healthy) lives.

Another (8) _____of happiness is to be active and have hobbies. We can collect stamps, go fishing or play a sport.

Finally, many people find happiness in (9) _____(help) others. (10) _____ you want to feel happier, do something nice for someone.

文章大意：本文为说明文，主要介绍如何寻找幸福。

1. success 考查词汇的拼写，根据汉语提示以及上下文可知此处应用“成功”的名词形式，所以答案为 success。

2. ourselves 考查代词，“幸福取决于我们自己”，所以应该用 we 的反身代词形式，答案为 ourselves。

3. are 考查主谓一致，分析句子结构可知本句的主语为“a few ways”，所以答案为 are。

4. as 考查固定短语 such as，所以答案为 as。

5. favotite/favourite 考查单词的拼写，根据上下文可知此处意思是“最喜爱的”，又根据所给首字母 f 判断，此处答案为 favotite/favourite。

6. who/that 考查定语从句，分析句子结构可知此处应该填写定语从句的关系代词，且先行词为 people，所以答案为 who/that。

7. healthier 考查形容词的比较等级，根据上下文的 happier and _____ lives 可知此处应该填写所给单词“healthy”的比较级，所以答案为 healthier。

8. secret 考查上下文语境，根据第二段中的“The first secret of happiness---”可知此处答案为 secret。

9. helping 考查非谓语动词，介词的后面用动词的-ing 形式作宾语，所以答案为 helping。

10. If 考查状语从句，分析句子结构可知第一句为 if 引导的条件状语从句，if 位于句首，所以答案为 If。

专项训练

A

Hello, everyone! I am your new friend. My name is Mike Brown. Mike is my (1) _____(one) name, and Brown is my family name. There are three people in my family——my wife, my (2)_____ and I. I was born (3)_____ 1976. My birthday is on January 1st. It's also the New Year. I like soccer, because I think it is (4) _____ (interest). My wife has a clothes store. Many people come to her store to (5)_____ (buy) clothes. So she is very (6)b_____. My son is a student. He goes to school every day. His favorite (7) _____(学科) is music. On the (8)_____(周末), we will get together to have a good time! What (9)_____ your family? Can you let (10)_____ (me) know?

B

There are (1)_____ seasons in a year. They are spring, summer, (2)_____ and winter. My mother likes spring, because the (3)w_____is warm. I like summer best. Although it's hot and (4)_____(sun), I like to go swimming and (5)_____(fish). My father (6)_____(think) autumn is (7) _____ (舒服的，舒适的), it's neither too cold (8)_____too hot. I hate winter, it's too cold. But my brother Tom likes it very much, and he is happy to (9) _____(make) a snowman when it is snowing and he likes skating on the ice. How about (10)_____ (you)? What's your favorite season?

C

What do you think of the after-school activities? They can help (1) _____(we) grow up in many ways. They can offer us chances to (2) _____(练习) what we learn in class. Through various (3) _____(activity), we can learn something (4)_____ we can't learn from the books. What's more, they help (5) _____ (develop) our abilities both for our studies now and for our work in the future. We are busy (6)_____ our studies in school, so after school, we need to (7) r_____ ourselves. After-school activities just make it possible for us (8)_____(breathe) fresh air and remove tiredness. Then, we can pay attention (9)_____ our studies and achieve good results. So, all the students get out and (10)_____(take) an active part in various after-school activities!

D

Last Sunday my father and I went fishing by bike. We got up very early that day. When we (1)_____(leave) home, the moon could still be (2)_____(see) in the sky. The morning air was (3)_____(凉爽的) and I felt wind on my face. This made us very (4)_____(comfort). We laughed and talked all the way while we were riding our (5)_____. By about six we were already sitting by the river. (6)_____(fish) is not easy. If you want to be (7)_____(success), you must be very careful. That day we had another

good catch. We caught a lot of fish and enjoyed (8)_____(we) very much. It was late when we (9) a_____ home. We felt a little tired (10) _____ happy. It is a very good sport. I like it very much.

E

Dragon Boat Festival was a (1) _____(传统的）Chinese festival. It is in memory of Qu Yuan, one of the (2)_____ (great) Chinese poets. He killed (3)_____ (he) by jumping into the Miluo River on May 5th of the lunar calendar (阴历), 278 BC. People there rowed the boats to (4) _____(save) him. But it was too late. Then they (5)_____(throw) rice into the river to (6) f_____ the fishes so that they would stay away from his body. (7)_____ then on, every year on this day, people enjoy (8)_____(eat) Zongzi (9)_____ is made of rice with meat, eggs and so on. Have you ever seen the dragon boat race on TV? Several teams row their dragon-shaped boats as (10)_____ (quick) as they can. It is another important part of this festival.

F

Nowadays, shopping online becomes more and more popular. Many people like doing some shopping through the Internet.

First, there are (1)_____(thousand) of goods for you to (2) c_____ from on the Internet. The price on the Internet is usually (3)_____(low) than that in the store. People can save some money. Second, people have their own (4) _____(电脑) and it is convenient (5)_____ them to do shopping at home. They can (6) s_____ a lot of time.

However, some people don't think so. (7)_____(顾客) can only see the pictures of the goods. They can't enjoy the pleasure of (8)_____(buy) things in a large supermarket or a (9)_____(wonder) shopping center. And some people are worried (10)_____ the safety of shopping online.

G

This was Allan's (1)_____(one) time to go traveling by air. He felt (2)_____ (excite) but he didn't know how he could (3)_____(find) his seat, so he asked the air hostess,

"Could you (4)_____ (helpful) me? I can't find my seat." The air hostess showed him the (5)_____ and told him to sit down and fasten the seat belt. She told Allan not to move about when the flight was going up. And she also said (6)_____ Allan's ears might (7) f_____ a little strange, but he didn't need to worry (8)_____ it because many people felt like that. When the plane was flying very high, Allan could stand up and walk around. He could either read books (9)_____ see films. Allan would enjoy the (10)_____(航行，航班）and arrive home soon.

H

How much do you know about American schools? They are quite (1)_____ (difference) from those in China. In America, (2)_____ the beginning of the term, students must (3) s_____ their courses and teachers first. While in China, students usually have no chances to select that. Selecting is very important for your grades in America. So at the first term, don't select too many courses, or you'll feel very (4)_____(紧张的) and it may influence your study. Then you have to ask for help from teaching (5)_____(计划). There is some(6) _____(信息) about subjects, time arranging, marks and textbooks. At the same (7)_____, you must choose the teachers. Different teachers have different teaching methods. If the teacher is (8)_____(call) "killer" by the last grade, many students will give up (9)_____ (choose) him. (10)_____ this kind of teacher will leave too much homework, too many exams and give too low grades.

I

Every Monday afternoon, Shi, a (1)_____(职业的) school student, has an (2) _____(appoint) with ten old people, aged from 40 to 70. As a volunteer, she (3)_____ (choose) to teach these elderly people English for free in her community. She could practice her English while teaching others. And it turned out that she benefited from her job (4)_____(much) than expected. "They taught me how to (5) c_____ with

others. With those old people you must always be polite and (6)_____(patience). They are very (7)_____(friend) to me." Shi said. She said the job gave (8)_____ a sense of achievement as a (9)_____(成员) of society, especially when three grannies said to her once, "Thank you (10)_____ your hard work!"

J

When you're busy or (1)_____(有压力的), don't forget your hobbies, such as listening to music, reading and playing ball games. If eating makes you (2) f_____ better, you can go to your favorite (3) r_____ to have a delicious meal. If you are worried about your English and don't know how to (4)_____(提高，改善) it, why not watch some English TV programs? If you're feeling bad about your (5)_____(weigh) and don't know (6)_____ to do, why not go walking or (7)_____(jog)? Finally, trying to keep your worries to yourself can make them much (8)_____(bad). I like to share my problems with my friends.They always give me useful (9) s_____. If you don't know who to talk to, you can always write (10)_____ me. You're never alone.

K

Yao Ming is a world famous basketball player. He was born in Shanghai in 1980. He is as tall as 2.26 meters. So he is called "Little Giant". He (1) p_____ wearing sports clothes. When he has time, he enjoys playing computer games and listening (2) _____ music. He (3) _____ (entrance) the NBA to become a (4)_____(profession) basketball player and played for Houston Rockets in 2002. He worked hard to make his dream come true and show the world (5) _____ Chinese people love basketball, too. He is an (6)_____(随和的) person. He is very friendly and (7) _____ (humor). He gets on well (8) _____ other players. He likes to help people when they are in (9)_____(麻烦). Chinese people, (10) e_____ Shanghai people, are very proud of him.

L

The Internet is becoming more and more important in our daily life. (1) _____ is very easy to go on line, so a lot of people use the Internet every day.

Thanks (2) _____ the Internet, we can get a lot of useful (3) i_____ and send e-mails through the Internet. We can even shop on line. What's more, when we get (4)_____(tiring) from work or study, we can (5)_____(放松) ourselves by playing computer games or (6) c_____ with friends through WeChat. But some people like to be on line all the time. They even spend the whole night (7) _____ it. They (8) _____ (浪费) a lot of time (9)_____(play) computer games. It is bad for people's eyes. We should learn to use the Internet properly so that it can become really (10) _____ (help) to us.

M

School trip is an opportunity to learn outside in (1) _____ (interest) ways.

Seeing something in real life can help you learn quickly and (2) _____ (easy). Here are some tips:

A trip to a farm to see some (3) p_____ and animals.

Trips to old buildings as part of your history lessons.

Theater trips to see plays (4) _____ you are studying in lessons.

But school (5) _____ aren't always about study. Some school trips are about sports (6)_____(活动). If you are a (7) m_____ of a school sports team, you might go on a special trip to compete (8) _____ other school teams. School trips to places like Disney Land can get you to learn new things without even (9) _____ (realize) it!

School trips are a (10)_____(自然的)way to learn more about the real world.

N

Body language is (1) _____ (use) by people who send messages to one another. It is very useful and (2) _____ (help) because it can help you make yourself easily (3) _____ (understand). When you are talking with others, you are not only just using words, (4) _____using gestures. Waving one's hand means "Goodbye". Shaking hands means welcome, and clapping hands means (5)_____ (祝贺). (6) N_____the head means agreement, and shaking the head means disagreement. The gestures are accepted by both Chinese and

foreigners as having the same (7) _____ (mean).

The countries where they have different customs have different body languages. Following the customs will help (8)_____(your) communicate (9)_____ people and make your staying there much more pleasant and (1)_____(舒适的).

O

Our environment is heavily polluted. There (1) _____ (be) many causes of pollution. Firstly, So many vehicles in cities give (2) _____ poisonous gases (3) _____ pollute the air. Secondly, many factories let their (4) _____ (dirt) water directly flow into rivers and lakes. Thirdly, farmers use more and more chemicals and pesticides（杀虫剂）. So our fields and crops are (5) _____ (pollute).

These pollutions are (6) h_____ to our health. Polluted water, food, including vegetables, can cause (7)_____ (癌症). When we (8)_____ (呼吸) much dirty air into our lung, we may fall ill.

Now governments are taking measures to (9) _____ (solve) the problem of pollution. Also, people are encouraged to (10) _____ (种植) more trees.

P

Born in the city, I'm used to (1) _____ (live) in the city, even the noises and (2)_____ (pollute). I have never been to the countryside. Nature is a strange word to me. This summer I had a (3) _____ (机会) to visit the countryside.

This is a small village far away cities. The life in the (4) _____ is simple. There are few cars or other (5) _____ (traffic) on the way. The air is (6) _____ (新鲜的). The people are (7) _____ (friend). What's more, here you can (8) _____ (hear) the sound of nature. You can see the children playing with water in the river and the dogs (9)_____（run）after them. (10)_____ a wonderful picture of countryside!

Q

Dear Peter,

I'm glad to receive your letter asking for my (1) _____ (advice) on how to learn Chinese well. Here are a few (2) s_____. First, (3) _____is important to take a Chinese course, as you'll (4) _____(be) able to learn from the teacher and practice with your classmates. Then, it also helps to watch TV and read books, newspapers and magazines in (5)_____ whenever (6)_____ (impossible). Besides, it should be a good idea to (7) _____ (learn) and sing Chinese songs, because doing so you'll learn and (8) _____(记住) Chinese words more (9) _____（easy）. You can also make more friends. They can help you learn Chinese. Try and write (10) _____ me in Chinese next time.

R

Zhang Yining was born in Beijing in (1) ____ (十月)，1982. She liked to play table tennis (2) _____ she was very young. She started to play table tennis at the age of six. When she was eleven, she (3)_____ (加入) the National Table Tennis Team. She practiced (4)_____ （play） table tennis in the team and studied at school very(5)_____ (hardly). In 2000, she (6)_____ (赢得) women's singles second place at the 45th World Table Tennis Championships. (7)_____ 2004, she held the champion of women's doubles in Athens Olympics, and carried off the (8) _____ (women) single champion.

Zhang Yining is a table tennis star and has gained great honor for (9) _____ (we) country. We should (10) _____ (learn) from her.

S

People often don't do (1) _____ they really want to do for fear of failure. You don't apply (2) _____ a job in case you don't get it. You don't perform at the school concert beacuse others might laugh (3) _____ you. A lack of (4) _____ (confident) can lead to a lot of suffering. The key to overcoming this problem is to believe in (5) _____ (you). This might be

(6) _____(easy)said than done, but there (7)_____ (be) many ways to help you do this. (8)_____ (talk) about your problem with a friend or look for advice on the (9)_____(互联网). Keep you calm when you get nervous. And the most important thing is: (10)_____(相信) you can do it. When you've learned to do that, you are well on your way.

T

It's important to know how to use a fire extinguisher. Here are the (1)_____(说明) to follow.

Firstly, pull the (2) p_____. This will (3)_____（允许）you to start the extinguisher.

Secondly, aim at the base of the fire. If you aim at the (4)_____（火焰）, it will not do good. You should aim at the fuel.

Next, squeeze the top handle. This pushes up a button (5) _____ starts the extinguisher.

And then, (6) s_____ from side to side (7) _____ the fire is completely out. Start to use the extinguisher from a (8) _____ (safety) distance away, then move forward. Once the fire is (9)_____, keep an eye on the area in case it (10) _____ (start) again.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

应试技巧

根据情景内容补全对话是依据历年山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试英语考试说明中规定的日常交际用语中的话题，对学生实际运用语言交际的能力进行测试的一种题型，主要考查学生在具体的语言情境中对语言灵活运用的能力。

在解答这类题型时，应掌握以下步骤：

（1）浏览对话，快速判断语言情境。

（2）根据语言情境仔细阅读，运用所提供的信息，填上使会话内容合乎逻辑的单词或句子。注意正确拼写单词，句首单词的第一个字母要大写。

（3）开放性交际题，答案不唯一，应依据题干提供的交际情景，填上自己熟悉的一个正确答案即可。

（4）检查全文，查缺补漏，检查固定搭配是否恰当，是否符合英语国家的文化习俗及拼写是否正确。

案例分析

A: Good morning, sir.

B: Good morning, sit down, please.

A: Are you Mr. Chen?

B: Yes, Nice to ___1___ you.

A:___2___ and what university did you graduate from?

B: I graduated from Nanjing University in June, 2013.

A: What's your ___3___ in university?

B: I majored in economic and trade English.

A: Well, we'll ___4___ in touch with you in a week.

B:___5___ you.

A: You are welcome.

分析：设置该题的目的是考查学生是否能够熟练使用问候、面试等交际用语。根据上文可以推断，这是面试时如何相互问候、询问学历、询问所学专业、感谢等用语的考查。答案为“1. meet　2. When　3. major　4. get　5. Thank”。

要想答好补全对话题，必须牢固掌握日常交际用语，并学会灵活运用。

专项训练

（一）补全对话（每空只能填一个单词）

A

A: What do you want to do when you ___1___ from your school?

B: I'd like to ___2___ a tour guide.

A: Why?

B: Because my ___3___ is Tourism.

A: Is this your career goal?

B: Maybe. I prefer such kind of lifestyle.

A: Do you have any ___4___ to do this job?

B: Yes. I have learned the knowledge about tourism.

A: That's good.

B: What about your career goal?

A: I've no ___5___. Maybe I should first make clear what type of work can make me happy.

B

A: Hello. Could I speak to David, Please?
B: Speaking! Who's ____1____?
A: ____2____ ____3____ Bruce here. I've got two tickets for the new film. Would you like to go with me?
B: Great! I'd ____4____ to.
A: Let's meet at seven o'clock, shall we?
B: OK, ____5____ shall we meet?
A: At the gate of the cinema.
B: OK. Thanks a lot for asking me.

C

A: Hello, Yellow River Service. Can I help you?
B: Yes, I'd like to ____1____ a taxi.
A: ____2____ your name, sir?
B: It's Zhou Jiankang.
A: Mr. Zhou.____3____ would you like your taxi?
B: Tuesday, June 8th, I'm leaving at 5:30 in the morning.
A: ____4____ to, sir?
B: To the airport.
A: Where shall we meet you then?
B: 99 Jianguo Street, near White Rose Restaurant.
A: Could you leave your telephone number?
B: Yes, it's 84222335.
A: Ok. I've got it.____5____ you for calling us.

D

A: Daniel, someone is waiting for you at the gate.
B: ____1____ is it?
A: I don't know. I forgot to ask for his name.
B: ____2____ ____3____is he?
A: He looks older than you, in his thirties.
B: What does he____4____ ____5____?
A: He is taller than you. He has short curly hair.
B: Does he wear glasses?
A: Yes, he does.
B: He must be my brother.

E

A: ____1____ your favorite sport?
B: My favorite sport is swimming.
A: ____2____ ____3____ do you go swimming?
B: Once a week.
A: ____4____ do you go swimming with?
B: I usually go swimming with Jim.
A: ____5____ do you like swimming?
B: I like swimming because it's relaxing.
A: Who swims faster, Jim or you?
B: Jim swims as fast as I.

F

A: Hello, Li Hua. ____1____ to see you here. Are you working in this supermarket?
B: Yes. I'm a sales manager here. I'm in charge of sales department.
A: Great! I'm ____2____ to hear that. Congratulations!
B: Thank you. Wang Tao, ____3____ is your job going?
A: I'm looking for a new job because I really don't like what I am doing now.
B: Now we need a salesperson to sell our new computer. Are you interested in it?
A: But I'm afraid I have no work ____4____.
B: That doesn't matter. You will be trained for a month before you start to work.
A: Good. I may have a try.
B: Ok. Would you like to come and fill out an ____5____ form?
A: Sure.

G

A: Good morning, sir.
B: Good morning, sit____1____, please.
A: Are you Mr. Chen?
B: Yes. Nice to____2____ you, sir.
A: When and what university did you ____3____ from?
B: I graduated from Nanjing University in June, 2012.
A: What's your ____4____ in university?
B: I majored in economic and trade English.
A: Have you got any experience in advertising?
B: Yes. I have been working in an advertisement company in the last two years.
A:____5____ would you be available to start work here?

B: I am available as soon as possible.

A: Well, we'll get in touch with you as soon as possible.

B: Thank you.

H

A: Hello! Where are you from?

B: I'm from America. ___1___ ___2___ you?

A: I'm from China.

B: China? It's a beautiful country.

A: Have you ever been to China before?

B: Yes, I have.

A: ___3___ did you go there?

B: Two years ago.

A: What do you ___4___ ___5___ Chinese food?

B: It's delicious.

A: If you go to visit China next time, I'll show you around.

I

A: Hi! Daniel. ___1___ ___2___ Jenny.

B: Oh, hi. ___3___ are things?

A: Just fine. Thanks. Are you doing anything this weekend?

B: Nothing much. Why?

A: A famous art teacher will come to school and give us a talk on how to draw well. Would you like to come?

B: Sure. ___4___ will it start?

A: At 2:30 on Saturday afternoon.

B: Where?

A: In the second meeting hall. Don't be late.

B: I won't. ___5___ you then.

J

A: Good afternoon, madam.

B: Good afternoon, young man. ___1___ can I do for you?

A: I'm new to the school. I'd like to have a library card.

B: OK. One moment please… I'll get the form ready. Um. Date… May 10th. What's your ___2___, please?

A: Tom White.

B: OK. T-O-M, Tom. W-H-I-T-E, White.

A: That's right.

B: Are you working or studying here?

A: I'm a student.

B: What class are you in?

A: I'm in Class 6, Grade 1.

B: OK. Your library card number is 2-1-5-8.

A: By the way, can I borrow some books?

B: Of ____3____. They are on the second floor.

A:____4____ a lot.

B: You're ____5____

K

A: Good morning. Sit down, please. What kind of job are you ____1____ for?

B: Thank you. I'm applying for a computer programmer position.

A: What kind of____2____ have you had?

B：I ____3____ from Jinan Vocational School.

A: Do you have any work ____4____?

B: I've taught computer science in a high school for four years.

A: Great! Do you have a resume with you?

B: Yes. Here you are.

A: OK, we'll read it carefully and probably contact you in three days.

B:____5____ for your consideration.

L

A: Good evening and welcome to Sunny Hotel. May I ____1____ you?

B: Yes. I'm Carl White. I called you last week. I ____2____ a single room.

A: Just a moment, please. Oh, here. That's Mr. White, a teacher from New York University.

B: That's right.

A: Fine. Could you please help me check the information form?

B: Certainly.

A: OK. Let me see. That's Carl White. C-A-R-L, Carl, W-H-I-T-E, White.

B: That's right.

A: And your home address is No. 7 Center Street, New York.

B: Right.

A: All right. And that's your ID number 6518 NY. Your ____3____ ____4____ is cwnyu15@ sohu. com.

B: Yes, cwnyu. They are the first letters for Carl White New York University.

A: Ok. Thank you. Here's the key. Your room number is 814.
B: Thank you.
A: That's all ____5____.

二、补全对话（每空填写短语或句子）

A

A: Hello!____1____?
B: This is Jack speaking. ____2____?
A: This is Sam. I called you last night, but there was no reply.
B: I was shopping at that time. I bought something for my trip to Guangzhou.
A: Guangzhou? That's where the 16th Asian Games was held. How lucky you are!
B: So I am. What did you call me for?
A: I'll have a birthday party next Thursday.____3____?
B: I'd love to, but ____4____! My plane will take off next Thursday.
A: What a pity that you can't come!____5____!
B: Thank you very much. Bye!
A: Bye!

B

A: Bob, the radio says it is sunny tomorrow. Do you have any plans?
B: Of course. I want to go to the beach.____1____?
A: I'm going to do some sports.
B:____2____?
A: I like basketball best. I think it can help me grow stronger.
B:____3____.
A: I will play it in the gym. By the way, who will you go to the beach with?
B: I'll go with my parents.
A:____4____?
B: We will go there by car.
A: Have a good time.
B:____5____.

C

A：Good morning, sir. What can I do for you?
B：____1____. Do you have any white shirts?
A：Yes.____2____?
B：I want Size M.

A：Here you are.
B：_____3_____?
A：Sure. Is it all right?
B：Yes. I like it very much._____4_____?
A：296 yuan.
B：That's a bit expensive. Do you have any other kind? I want a cheaper one.
A：What about this one? It is only 108 yuan.
B：OK._____5_____. Here is the money.
A：Thank you. Goodbye, sir.

D

A: Good morning, Doctor.
B: Good morning, my boy!_____1_____?
A: I've got a headache and a cough. I'm sure there's something wrong with me.
B: How are you feeling now?
A: I'm feeling even worse now.
B:_____2_____. Oh, it's a bit high. I'm afraid you've got a cold.
_____3_____?
A: Even since last night. Is it serious, doctor?
B: No._____4_____. Don't worry about it. Did you eat anything for breakfast this morning?
A: No, I didn't feel like eating anything. What should I do, doctor?
B: Well, Take the medicine three times a day. Stay in bed to have a good rest and drink plenty of water. You'll get well soon.
A:_____5_____, doctor. Goodbye.
B: That's all right. Goodbye.

E

A: Excuse me, I want to go to the museum._____1_____?
B: Go down this street and turn right at the second crossing. Go up the road to the end, you'll find it.
A:_____2_____?
B: It's about 1,000 metres away.
A: Oh. That's quite a long way.
B: Yes. You'd better take a bus.
A:_____3_____?
B: You can take the No.115 Bus. It'll take you there.
A:_____4_____?
B: It takes about fifteen minutes.

A:_____5_____.

B: It's a pleasure.

F

A: Excuse me, sir? Where is the nearest hotel?

B: _____1_____You may ask that policeman over there.

A: Thank you all the same.

(The man goes to the policeman)

A: Excuse me._____2_____

C: No, there isn't a hotel near here, but there is one near Bank of China.

A: _____3_____

C: It's about two kilometres away.

A: _____4_____

C: Well, you can take a bus, and there is a bus going there.

A: _____5_____

C: You're welcome.

G

A: Good afternoon, welcome to our restaurant.

B: Thank you.

A: Here is a table for two._____1_____

B: Thank you. May I have the menu, please?

A: OK. Here it is._____2_____

B: Sorry, I haven't decided yet. Er…well, I think we would like to have Beijing roast duck and vegetable soup.

A: Ok._____3_____

B: Two cups of orange juice.

A:_____4_____

B: Some rice, please.

A: OK. Thank you for your order.

B: (Forty minutes later)_____5_____

A: Let me see. It's 100 dollars.

B: Here you are.

A: Thank you.

H

A: Good morning, doctor.

B: _____1_____. What's wrong with you?

A: _____2_____.

B: Did you have breakfast?

A: No, I didn't feel like eating anything this morning.

B: Have you taken your temperature?

A: Yes, it is 37° C and it seems to be all right.

B: How long have you been like this?

A: _____3_____.

B: I see. Let me examine you.

A: _____4_____ , doctor?

B: No, nothing serious. You will be well after a good rest.

A:_____5_____.

B: You're welcome.

I

A: Good morning, madam. _____1_____

B: I'd like a T-shirt for my son.

A: _____2_____

B: Size L. He is a tall boy. He loves cotton T-shirts.

A: What about this one? It's made in China.

B: OK. Let me have a look. _____3_____

A: 150 yuan. It's popular now.

B: But I'm afraid it's a little more expensive and I don't like the colour.

A: Do you like the black one? It's only 80 yuan.

B: Hmm, it looks nice. _____4_____Thank you.

A: _____5_____

J

A: Hi, Sue. It's Mary.

B: Oh, hi. _____1_____

A: Fine. Look, I am wondering if you are free on Saturday evening. I've got two tickets for a
concert. Would you like to come?

B: Oh, well, _____2_____. But, em, I am studying for my exams at the moment, and well, I'm sorry I can't.

A: OK. Don't worry. Some other time then, I suppose.

B: Oh, Yeah. Sure. But _____3_____? I think she's free at the weekend.

A: Jenny? Good idea! But could you tell me her telephone number?

B:_____4_____. Just a moment, please. It's 68906133.

A: 68906133. Thank you.

B: You're welcome. And _____5_____.
A: The same to you! Bye!
B: Bye!

K

A:_____1_____Mr. Jones, please have a seat. Thank you for coming in today. I have read your resume. You completed University in England?
B: Yes, I went to Cambridge.
A: So,_____2_____?
B: I have ten years' marketing experience.
A: I can see that from your resume.
B: I was ready for something new. I would like to have a job that is challenging.
A: I see._____3_____?
B: I would rather work full-time.
A: I'll make a note of that. Now,_____4_____?
B: I am willing to negotiate, but I expect at least $40, 000 a year...
A: Well, that's all for the interview. Thank you for your interest in this job.
B:_____5_____.

五、职场应用

应试技巧

职场应用旨在测试考生在一定的生活和职业场景下英语的应用能力，包括信息理解与加工能力、按要求完成任务的能力等。考生能准确理解任务要求及信息内容，能分析、筛选有用信息，运用学过的英语知识和所掌握的写作技能，完成相应的任务。其中要求写出短文时,要表达准确，语法正确，书写规范，卷面整洁，词数为 80～120。

根据山东省中等职业学校学生的具体特点和历年考试说明的范围，做这一题型时应注意从以下几个方面入手：

（1）认真阅读任务，明确任务要求。职场应用的任务及任务要求是基于学生就业后可能遇到的真实的职业场景而确定的。

（2）根据任务要求，逐步完成任务。对主要任务列出内容要点、分清层次。

（3）要求写出短文时，应以相应的记叙文、议论文、说明文、应用文等文体来表达，并能灵活运用所学的关联词或增添适当的过渡句，将各要点词或句有机地连接起来，使之语句通顺、上下连贯、主旨突出。

① 要用自己最熟悉的词汇或句型去表达要说的意思，尽量多使用简单句和短句；

② 要注意时态、语态、语气，尤其要注意动词的变化、主谓一致及一些习惯用法等。

（4）反复阅读检查初稿，校对全篇，认真誊写并注意卷面整洁。

任务完成后，要从头到尾仔细地阅读和修改，看看内容是否符合任务要求，内容有

无遗漏，对任务的说明是否自相矛盾，文意是否通顺、连贯，有无时态、语态等语法错误。努力做到句与句之间过渡自然，文章结构合理，语言正确，文理通顺。还要看是否达到了规定的字数。确信无误，再正式誊写，此时书写一定要工整，卷面一定要整洁。

案例分析

志愿服务是社会文明的体现。志愿服务能丰富个人的生活阅历、强化社会责任感。某学校将迎来英国专家进行校际间学术交流，本次活动需要多名志愿者。

任务一　阅读学校征集志愿者的广告，完成任务单。



Four British engineers will come to our school on September 20. They are going to teach us how to use the new equipment in the lab. We have four positions for volunteers. Position 1: We need volunteers to work as tour guides to offer general help. Position 2: We need at least three volunteers to set up the projectors, computers and the equipment in the lab. Position 3: We also need some help in the kitchen. And Position 4: some help at the reception desk. If your English is good and you are willing to help, please come on board!

Worksheet

Items	School's Needs
Time	on (1)_____
Event	Four foreign engineers will come to school. School needs (2) _____.
Positions	1. Work as tour guides 2. Help in the (3)_____ 3. Help in the (4)_____ 4. Help at the (5)_____

任务二　假如你是 Zhang Li，愿意做志愿者。写一篇演讲稿，竞争志愿者的某一个职位。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

参考答案

任务一

(1) September 20 (2) volunteers (3) lab (4) kitchen (5) reception desk

任务二

Hello, everybody! I'm very pleased to be here. My name is Zhang Li. I want to be a volunteer and work as a tour guide. I'm in Grade 2. My major is Business Tourism. I'm interested in it. I've learned much about it. I'm familiar with many places of interest. English is my favorite. My oral English is very good. I won the first in the oral English competition in our school.

If I could be one of the volunteers，I would try my best to work for foreign engineers and give them the best help. I'll show them the spirit of our young generation.

Thank you for your listening!

专项训练

(一)

21 世纪的今天，服务无处不在。为客户提供优质的服务、满足顾客多层次、多方位的需求是服务类企业生存发展的根本。

Baluch's Indian Restaurant 正在进行提升服务能力的改革。假如你是经理，请根据餐厅的宣传广告，写一份餐厅活动的口头介绍，以方便接待顾客。



内容要点：

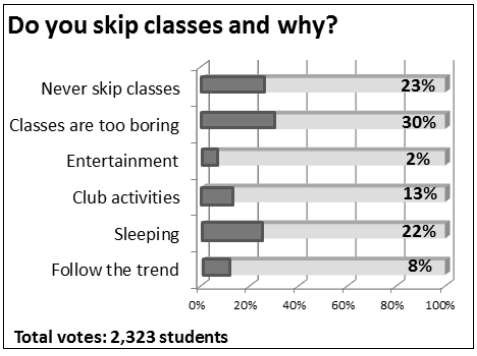
1. 本次活动的内容和时间。
2. 在线预订事宜。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称，词数：80～120。

(二)

高等教育正在走向大众化，越来越多的年轻人有机会进入大学。但由于各方面原因，大学生上课出勤率不高。

为了全面了解在校学生的学习情况，某报记者对几所大学学生缺席课堂情况作了调查。请你根据下面的调查结果，写一篇报道。



内容要点：

1. 对结果进行描述分析。

2. 针对其中 2～3 种现象提出建议。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称，词数：80～120。

(三)

助梦腾飞，融入世界——“一带一路”战略构建我国对外开放新格局。能合理安排来自世界各国人员的会议和餐饮事宜是对秘书工作的新要求。

假如你是一家外资公司的秘书Li Yang，你们公司计划承办一个大型会议，会后需安排餐饮。

任务一　阅读下面信息，完成任务单。

You work as a secretary in a foreign company in Beijing. Your company is going to hold a conference. There will be 60 guests to attend it, who are from all over Asia. You are responsible for the arrangement of food and drinks for the conference. You should choose a restaurant that is not far from your company. You have to consider the difference in their food preference. You wish to find a five-star chef and hopefully you can limit the per capita（人头）cost to no more than ￥300.

Worksheet

Where is the company?	(1)_____
Where are the guests from?	(2)_____
How many guests are there?	(3)_____
What requirements does the company have for the chef?	(4)_____
How much can the company pay for the meal?	(5)_____

任务二　根据公司需要，写一份详细的就餐安排，以书面形式呈现给经理。

内容要点：transportation, restaurant, tables, main food, drinks, chef, price and so on

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120；开头结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear manager,

Our company is going to hold a conference. We will invite 60 people from all over Asia.

Yours，

Li Yang

（四）

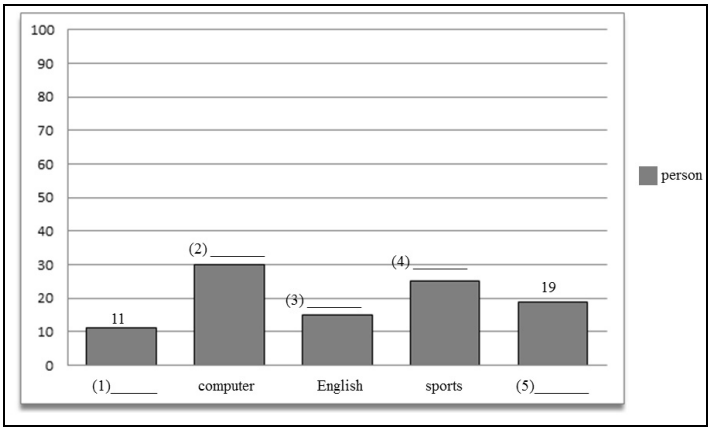
精彩的学生社团活动是培养学生兴趣爱好，繁荣校园文化的第二课堂。

下面是对即将加入社团的 100 名学生进行的关于兴趣爱好的调查报告，请根据要求，完成任务。

任务一 阅读调查报告，完成柱状图的绘制。

There are five clubs in our school, which are cooking club, computer club, English club, sports club and music club. We did a survey on the interests and hobbies among 100 students. Here is the result of the survey. Ten of the students enjoy delicious food and try to make food by themselves. And there is one student who wants to learn cooking for his mother. Eight of them say they want to be computer programmers in the future. They are all interested in computer games and they want to design the new online games. 22% of the students would like to experience the excitement of making flash all by themselves. Fifteen of the students say English is their favorite subject. And they often chat with friends in English. They want to join a club where they can invite some foreigners to help them improve their spoken English. 20 of the students want to join a sports club and do some exercise like yoga to reduce stress with the help of the staff. There are 5 girls who say they are getting fatter. They want to join a health program to make themselves healthy and happy. 19% of the students like dancing and singing. They want to take part in some performances and experience the pleasure of music.

The result of the survey



任务二 选择其中的一个社团，为他们设计宣传广告。

内容要点：

1. 社团的名称。
2. 活动内容。
3. 活动的时间，地点。
4. 联系方式。
5. 会员收费。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

（五）

针对性集中管理是受很多人认可和欢迎的成熟社区服务模式。

暑假将至，为了帮社区的孩子度过一个有意义的假期，社区决定成立一个暑假托管中心（Summer Care Center）并就此向家长征询建议。

任务一 阅读下面信息，完成任务单。

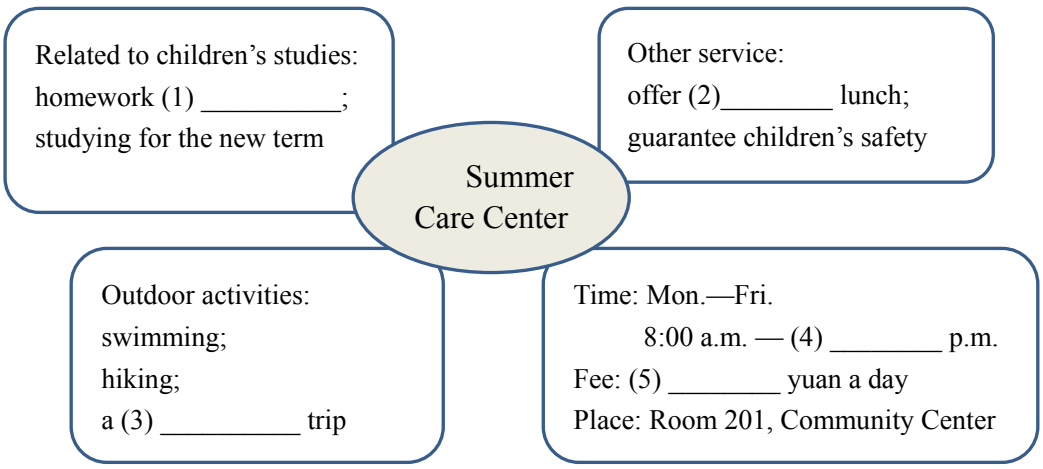
The summer holiday is coming. That means parents have to find other ways to kill the kids' time. Here are some parents' suggestions about the Summer Care Center.

Ms. Ding: First of all, I work full-time. I'm a single mom and there is nobody who can help me look after the child and my job ends at 5:30p.m., so he must have care. I don't want him just in a place where he's either parked in front of a TV or handed a crayon or something like that. I hope the center can offer some activities which can give the child a colorful holiday.

Madam Lee, who has two sons, said such places could help to prevent children from having to wander around during the holiday. "It's so convenient that I don't have to worry about their safety. I also hope the center can offer the children cooked lunch and provide some programs that are related to the pupil's studies." She said, "If they miss out on anything in school, the care center's teachers will help them catch up."

Mr. Chen said the fee should be reasonable. It's the best that it's no more than 50 yuan per day. They can offer some service such as homework supervision(作业监督), studying for the new term and so on. Of course, they can organize some outdoor activities, like swimming, hiking or a two or three days' trip. All of them can give the children a meaningful holiday.

Worksheet



任务二 根据家长意见，完成社区 "Summer Care Center"的宣传海报。
注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Join us – Summer Care Center

Aims



When _____ _____

Where _____ _____

Cost _____

Special offer

For more information, please call us at 15498762148.

(六)

大力开展健康教育工作，普及健康知识，是引领社会公众养成良好生活习惯的重要途径。Linda Smith 是学校医务室的医生，请根据她所接诊的三名学生的情况，完成下面的任务。

任务一 阅读下面的信息，完成任务单。

Linda Smith works at the school clinic. Yesterday afternoon, three students visited her office.

The first one was Sam, a very fat boy. He said that he had a stomachache. Linda asked what he had for lunch. Sam said that he had 3 big hamburgers and a large box of ice-cream. "What a huge lunch!" said Dr. Smith. "Well, it is nothing serious. Just remember to exercise more and eat less!"

Sophie was the second. It was a cold day, but she was in a very short skirt. She looked pale and kept coughing all the time. After a careful check, Dr. Smith said, "You've caught a cold. It is not serious. Take the pills three times a day for 3 days. Remember to wear warmer clothes on cold days."

The last was Henry. He had a headache and felt dizzy. He said that he played computer games all night and it caused a pain in the neck. After examination, Dr. Smith said, "You'd better lie in bed and have a good rest. Stand up from the chair and do some exercise every hour when you sit in front of the computer."

Worksheet

	Patient 1	Patient 2	Patient 3
Name	Sam	(1) _____	Henry
Symptoms(症状)	Have a (2) _____.	Look pale. Keep(3)_____.	Have a headache. Feel (4) _____. Have (5) _____.
Causes	Eat too much.	Catch (6) _____.	(7) _____all night.
Treatment (治疗方法)	(8) _____.	Take(9)_____on time. Wear warmer clothes.	Have a good rest. (10) _____ from the chair and do some exercise every hour.

任务二 请根据三名学生出现的健康状况，在校报上写一篇文章，就如何养成良好生活习惯提供建议。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

(七)

结婚是人生旅程中最重要的经历之一。

Mark 和 Li Lan 打算近期结婚，他们想举行中式婚礼。假如你是某公司的婚礼策划师 David, 请根据下面的信息，为他们策划婚礼。

任务一 阅读 Mark 和 Li Lan 的相关信息，完成任务单。

Mark comes from Australia. He is a sales manager in a company in Qingdao. He wants to hold his wedding ceremony in a hotel in Qingdao. About 30 of his colleagues and friends will attend it. Li Lan is Chinese, and she is a teacher in a primary school in Qingdao. 12 of her relatives and friends in Zibo will come to attend their wedding ceremony. They need to arrive in Qingdao on October 1st. The wedding ceremony will be held at 10:00 a.m. on October 2nd. Their honeymoon starts from October 3rd and will be spent in Hainan Island.

Worksheet

	Nationality	Work	Number of colleagues (relatives) or friends	The date of their wedding ceremony
Mark	(1)_____	(2)_____	30	(3)_____
Li Lan	Chinese	(4)_____	(5)_____	

任务二 根据以上信息，给 Mark 发邮件，将相关事宜告知。

主要内容：

1. What is your task?

2. What activities do you arrange for them from Oct.1st to Oct. 3rd?

参考词汇：

dress up, wedding dress, wedding rings, dinner

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Dear Mark,

How do you do? _____

I hope you are satisfied with it.

Yours,
David

(八)

阳光体育活动促使青少年走向操场，走向大自然，健康快乐成长。

某校为了完善体育设施，现公开招标。某公司有意竞标，你是该公司的秘书 Zhang Li，请根据下面的信息，写出竞标演讲稿。

任务一 根据下面的招标信息，完成表格。

The project covers an area of 10,000 square meters, including 400-meter playground racetrack(跑道), a football field, 2 badminton courts and 4 basketball courts. All the materials used should be of best quality. The quality should be guaranteed(保证) for 5 years. The project should be finished within 90 days. The cost of the project should not be over 2 million yuan. The less, the better. All bidders(竞标者) should have a history with a fine fame. They should present their Business Licenses as well as similar successful achievements. Please contact Li Ming at 65896312.

Worksheet

Area of the project	Project items	Guarantee period	Construction time	Cost
(1)_____	400-meter playground racetrack, a football field, (2)_____, 4 basketball courts	(3)_____	(4)_____	(5)_____

任务二 根据上面所得信息，写出竞标演讲稿。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Ladies and gentlemen,

Good morning! _____

（九）

互联网已经得到广泛应用，为解决生活、学习中遇到的问题，很多人会去网络论坛寻求帮助。

假如你是某校心理咨询师 Li Na，为论坛上来自美国的学生提供心理咨询服务。

任务一 阅读求助留言，完成任务单。

Looking for help
I've just come to a vocational school in China and I have no friends in the new school. I really miss my old friends very much. And the most seriously, I am too shy to talk to others. I want to make more new friends. What should I do? Jim
I like playing computer games. But my parents don't want me to do it. They think I play computer games too much, but in fact I only play it for a short time on weekends and I often spend more time looking through useful information for my study and listening to music. I like music very much. I am very upset. What should I do? Cathy
I moved to China with my family three months ago. I can't study Chinese well. There are so many Chinese words for me to learn, and I can hardly remember them so I failed in my Chinese test last Friday. Can you help me? Peter

Worksheet

a. Jim has trouble in (1)_____, because (2)_____.
b. Cathy's parents think she spends too much time (3) _____.
c. (4)_____ can't do well in Chinese and (5) _____ last Friday.

任务二 选择其中一个学生的留言，给予回复。

内容要求：

1. 谈谈对他（她）提及事情的看法。
2. 提供解决问题的建议。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Dear_____，

I’m very glad that I can give you a hand._____

Yours，

Li Na

(十)

文明在哪里？文明就在我身边，在我们的生活里！

假如你是 China Daily 的一名记者，做了一次有关文明行为的问卷调查, 请根据调查结果，以“It’s our duty to be civilized.”为题，写一篇短文，倡导文明礼仪之风。

Questionnaire

A. Do you greet your parents or teachers quite often?（yes / no）

B. Do you play with the mobile phone in lectures or meetings?（yes / no）

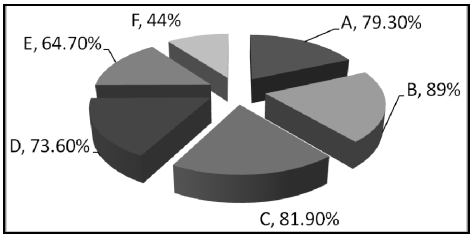
C. Do you put the things you don’t need where they were while shopping?（yes / no）

D. Do you save water in everyday life? （yes / no）

E. Do you offer seats to the old or the pregnant?（yes / no）

F. Do you throw away the rubbish freely?（yes / no）

The percentage of the people who answered “yes”



注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

It’s our duty to be civilized.

Let’s take action now.

第三部分
综合训练

综合训练一

第Ⅰ卷　选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. —_____ the weather like today?
—It's sunny.
A. How　　B. How's　　C. What's　　D. What

2. —Jane, you wear a new dress today!
—It fits me well, _____ the color is not my favorite.
A. but　　B. and　　C. or　　D. so

3. I _____ in this school since last year.
A. studied　　B. have studied　　C. study　　D. had studied

4. No one knows _____ will happen next.
A. what　　B. when　　C. why　　D. if

5. —I'll go to France for a holiday next month.
—Great! _____!
A. Have a good time　　B. Good luck
C. Glad to see you again　　D. Best wishes

6. —Nick is not at school. _____?
—He has a pain in his heart..
A. Who's that　　B. What's the matter
C. What does he do　　D. Where is he

7. —I don't mind lending you my dictionary.
—You _____. I have already bought one.
A. needn't　　B. mustn't　　C. can't　　D. shouldn't

8. —There is still a copy of the book in the library. Will you go and borrow _____?
—No, I'd rather buy _____ in the bookstore.
A. one; one B. it; one C. one; it D. it; it

9. Don't make noises, _____?
A. do you B. will you C. did you D. don't you

10. You should make a note of what was _____ before you make your weekly shopping list.
A. on sale B. on time C. on business D. on TV

11. I've come to apply _____ the position as a cashier.
A. to B. for C. as D. of

12. —Would you like me to bring you a cup of coffee?
—_____.
A. Yes, I'd like B. It's a pleasure
C. Yes, please D. It doesn't matter

13. —Have you found the wallet _____ you lost yesterday?
—Yes. I left it at home.
A. that B. who C. whose D. where

14. —It's too late. I have to go now.
—Oh. It's raining heavily outside. You'd better wait here _____ it stops.
A. since B. unitl C. while D. though

15. —We need three single rooms for the first week in June.
—_____. The hotel's not busy then.
A. No problem B. Don't bother C. Never mind D. It doesn't matter

16. —I'm sorry I broke the cup.
—Oh, _____. It wasn't very expensive.
A. you'd better not B. I'm afraid not
C. as you wish D. that's all right

17. Everybody except Mike and Linda _____ there when the meeting began.
A. is B. was C. are D. were

18. —My teacher says she's canceling the class play. I just can't understand.
—_____. You were looking forward to it.
A. It doesn't matter B. It's very unwise of her
C. Don't worry about it D. You must be disappointed

19. Studies show that people are more _____ to suffer from back problems if they always sit before computer screens for long hours.
A. likely B. possible C. probable D. sure

20. When you leave, please turn off the lights _____ the energy.
A. save B. saving C. to save D. saved

21. Of all the drinks, tea is _____ in the world. It has 5,000 years of history in China.
A. old　　B. older　　C. the oldest　　D. very old

22. —Sorry, I have to _____ now. It's time for class.
—OK. I'll call back later.
A. hang up　　B. break up　　C. give up　　D. hold up

23. You look well. The air and sea foods in Sanya must _____ you, I suppose.
A. agree with　　B. agree on　　C. agree to　　D. agree about

24. —What does she look like?
—She _____ thin with long shiny hair.
A. is　　B. looks like　　C. has　　D. does

25. Betty likes to help others. She is the most _____ in our class.
A. quiet　　B. warm-hearted　　C. forgetful　　D. naughty

26. The Smiths are traveling in Qingdao. When they see the sign, they can not _____ here.



A. swim　　B. shop　　C. fish　　D. walk

27. —Let's go shopping after school.
—_____ Call me at any time.
A. Sounds great.　　B. What for?
C. Hold on, please.　　D. What a pity!

28. _____ came to see him just now.
A. Two friends of Bob's　　B. Bob's two friends
C. Two Bob's friends　　D. Bob two friends

29. Mary is so _____. She comes to you whenever you're in trouble.
A. useful　　B. careful　　C. thankful　　D. helpful

30. —Thank you for supporting the volunteer project.
—_____! Many hands make light work.
A. My pleasure　　B. All right
C. That's right　　D. Never mind

二、阅读理解

A

Side A No. 293083



Student Bus Card

Name: Lilian

From: April 1st, 2012

To: June 30th, 2012

Price: £180

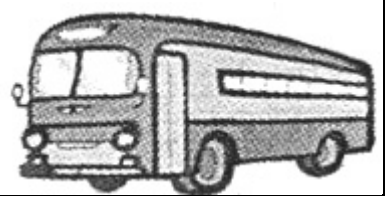
College: University of Chichester

Not valid for travel unless it's used in the bus companies of Stagecoach, Season, Goldrider and Busabout in the UK.

Side B No. 293083

Thank you for travelling with

If the card is found, please return to any Stagecoach driver.



31. The card is used for_____.

A. taking a taxi B. travelling by train

C. taking a bus D. entering the college

32. Lilian is_____.

A. a bus driver B. a university student

C. a teacher in a college D. a middle school student

33. The card can be used in any of the four_____.

A. cities B. colleges

C. universities D. companies

34. According to the reading material, if you find a lost card, you can _____.

A. sell it

B. phone Lilian

C. use it for travelling

D. give it back to any Stagecoach driver

35. You can not find _____ in the card.

A. Lilian's age　　B. the price

C. the card number　　D. the time limit

B

Imagine one day the water taps in your house stop running. You have to pay a lot of money to buy water from shops. And still there isn't enough water for everyone. Your mother has to save the family's shower water to use for washing clothes. Would you be able to stand that kind of life?

Probably not. But that is what kids in Yemen are experiencing. According to a report, the capital, Sana, will run out of drinking water as early as 2025.

Because of the water shortage, the Yemen government often cuts the water supply. Hannan, an 18-year-old girl, told the Time, "In a good week we'll have a water supply all week. But then the following week there will be water only for a day or two."

Hannan said only rich people have enough water to use. They can buy water from the shops or from the water trucks. Private companies own the trucks. They travel around the city every day to sell water—at very high prices.

"A lot of people can't pay for it," she said.

The government is thinking of making use of seawater. But it will cost a lot and it may not happen soon enough to help the people of Yemen.

36. How old is Hannan?

A. She is eight.　　B. She is eighteen.

C. She is seventeen.　　D. She is seven.

37. The underlined word "that" means _____.

A. buying water from shops

B. having enough drinking water

C. suffering from water shortage

D. washing clothes with used water

38. From the passage, we know that _____.

A. the people of Yemen don't have to worry about water

B. people in Yemen have no water to use during a bad week

C. Sana will have no drinking water in 50 years

D. private companies make much money by selling water

39. The Yemen government _____.

A. may try to make use of seawater

B. does nothing about the water problem

C. only cares about rich people's lives

D. may solve the problem soon

40. The writer wants to tell us _____.

A. not to use seawater　　B. not to waste water

C. to drink less water　　D. to sell water to Yemen

第 II 卷　非选择题

三、短文填空

Almost every day, we discuss the topic of health. But what is health? “Health” means eating well, getting enough exercise and having a 41._____ (health) 42._____ （生活方式）. Here are some useful rules.

Eat different kinds of food, eat fruits and vegetables. But many of 43._____ (we) only eat our 44._____ (favor) food.

Drink water and milk most often. Everyone knows 45._____ is important. Besides water, kids also need plenty 46._____ calcium （钙） to grow strong bones, which is rich in milk.

Pay attention 47._____ your body. When your stomache is full, stop 48._____ （eat）. Eating too much makes you become fat.

Try to 49. s_____ more time doing sports, like 50._____ (慢跑), swimming and so on.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: May I take your order, please?

B: Yes. I’d like 51._____.

A: All right. And 52._____?

B: Yes. I’ll have a salad.

A: OK. What kind of dressing would you like?

B: I’m not sure. What have you got?

A: We have Italian and French dressing.

B: 53._____.

A: 54._____?

B: I’d like a Coke, please.

A: Anything else?

B: No, thanks. That will be all.

A: Thank you.

B: 55._____.

五、职场应用

企业只有加强交流合作，才能在发展中获得双赢。

你是某公司经理 Sara，请根据音乐会宣传海报中的信息，写一份邀请函，邀请你的

合作伙伴——外资公司经理 Linda 来参加音乐会。

MasterCard Center

the Grand Concert on Christmas Eve

by *Langlang*



- Time: 19:00—21:00
- Date: December 24th
- Tel: 010-88228938
- Email: ytian@mastercardcenter.com.cn
- Prices: ¥280, ¥480, ¥680, ¥880, ¥1280
- Venue: MasterCard Center, No.69 Fuxing Road, Haidian District, Beijing

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Dear Linda，

Yours,
Sara

综合训练二

第 I 卷　选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. (on the mobile phone)
—Where are you? I can’t see you here at the theater.

—_____. I’m just one block away.

A. Good idea B. My pleasure

C. Nice talking to you D. I’m coming

2. —_____ does your new friend look like?

—He is tall with short blonde hair.

A. What B. How C. Who D. Where

3. —Are you going to take part in speech contest?

—_____ It’s too good an opportunity to miss.

A. No problem. B. That’s for sure.

C. Certainly not. D. Why bother?

4. —When did you have your school trip?

—_____.

A. In five days B. For five days

C. Twice a week D. Five days ago

5. —Do you have Mary’s phone number?

—Sorry, _____.

A. I don’t think so B. forget it

C. here you are D. I can’t remember it

6. —Have you _____?

—No, I had the wrong number.

A. got in B. got away C. got off D. got through

7. Mary telephoned the travel agency to _____ three air tickets to London.

A. bring B. arrange C. take D. book

8. China strongly _____ South Korea to stop the THAAD, otherwise South Korea will only end up hurting themselves and others.

A. advised B. adjusted C. avoided D. appeared

9. I often _____ the words I don’t know in the dictionary or on the Internet.

A. look up B. look at C. look for D. look into

10. I can _____ be a teacher. I’m not a very patient person.

A. seldom B. ever C. never D. always

11. —Let me help you move the sofa.

—No, thanks. I can do it by _____.

A. me B. my C. myself D. mine

12. —_____?

—It’s on sale. You only need to pay 50 yuan for it.

A. What’s for it B. How much is it

C. Can I help you D. May I help you

13. —_____ up, Anna. It’s seven thirty.

—One more minute, Mum.

A. Get　　B. Gets　　C. Getting　　D. Got

14. Yang Liwei came back to the earth after a _____ trip to space.

A. twenty hour's　　B. twenty-hours'　　C. twenty hours　　D. twenty-hour

15. Mary's child can't take the medicine. Her child may be _____ years old.



A. 2　　B. 4　　C. 6　　D. 8

16. What is the temperature at 2:30 pm, January 19th?　It's _____.

Temperature	January 18th	January 19th	January 20th
High Temperature	22℃ at 2:00 pm	19℃ at 2:30 pm	23℃ at 2:00 pm
Low Temperature	18℃ at 6:00 am	15℃ at 6:30 am	19℃ at 6:20 am

A. 22℃　　B. 18℃　　C. 15℃　　D. 19℃

17. If someone comes to see me, ask them to leave a _____.

A. message　　B. letter　　C. sentence　　D. notice

18. If you want to get more information about English learning, please visit our _____: www. ffdd. com.

A. office　　B. website　　C. company　　D. store

19. —How nice the music sounds!

—It does! The peaceful music will make you feel _____.

A. relaxing　　B. relaxed　　C. boring　　D. bored

20. —The dish is delicious!

—Well, at least it's _____ the one I cooked yesterday.

A. worse than　　B. as good as　　C. as well as　　D. as bad as

21. —Do you know _____ the skill training classes _____.

—Next term.

A. when, will take　　B. when, took　　C. whether, take　　D. whether, took

22. —How much did you pay for the drink?

—None. It was _____.

A. cheap　　B. expensive　　C. free　　D. easy

23. —They have been to the United States.

—Really? When _____ there?

A. do they go　　B. did they go

C. will they go　　D. have they gone

24. Linda bought a new house _____ a small garden. She will move in next week.

A. for　　B. from　　C. with　　D. of

25. Father was leaving for Shanghai on business when I _____ home.

A. arrives B. arrived C. was arriving D. have arrived

26. —Sorry, I made a mistake again.

—_____. Practice more and you'll succeed.

A. Never mind B. Certainly not

C. My pleasure D. Don't mention it

27. Although many great people ever failed, they never _____ and managed to succeed.

A. set out B. gave up C. stayed up D. kept on

28. —Could you come back home at three o'clock?

—_____. I'll be at the meeting at that time.

A. I think so B. I'm afraid so C. I hope so D. I'm afraid not

29. — I didn't win the match.

— Don't lose heart!_____ you work hard, hope is always around you .

A. Even though B. Unless C. As long as D. As far as

30. A kind of shared bike _____ is called mobike is getting more and more popular in Jinan.

A. it B. which C. who D. what

二、阅读理解

A

According to a new survey, students' safety has become a big problem. Nearly 50% of students say they are worried about robbery (抢劫)on the way to and from school. Now in main big cities in China, some schools have taught an unusual lesson: self-protection. Students like this lesson because there are no exams or boring classes. And they can learn how to save lives and know how to stop danger before it really happens.

Here's some advice on how to deal with danger.

If you are robbed

Keep calm if you can not cry for help or run away. Give the robber your money. Try to remember what the robber looks like and tell the police later.

If you are in a traffic accident

If a car hits you, you should remember the car number. If it is a bicycle, try to call your parents before you let the rider go. This is because you don't know how seriously you are hurt.

If it is raining hard and there is lightning (闪电)

Don't stay in high places and stay away from trees.

When there is a fire

Get away as fast as yon can. Put wet things on your body and try to find an exit. Do not take the lift.

If someone is drowning(溺水)

If you can't swim, don't get into the water. Cry out for help.

Remember that danger is never as far away as you think. Take care of yourself at all times!

31. Why do students like the self-protection lesson?

①Because there are no tests.

②Because the lessons are boring

③Because they can learn how to save lives.

④Because they know how to stop danger before it happens.

A. ①②　　B. ②③　　C. ①②④　　D. ①③④

32. What will you do if a bicycle hurts you?

A. I will remember the bicycle number.

B. I won't let the rider go until I call my parents.

C. I will let the rider go before I call my parents.

D. I will let the rider go because I know how seriously I am hurt.

33. If your house is on fire, you must _____.

A. put dry things on your body

B. run quickly and take the lift

C. run away and find an exit as quickly as you can

D. take everything you have and then run away

34. There are _____ways of self-protection mentioned in the passage.

A. 3　　B. 4　　C.5　　D.6

35. The best title for this passage is _____.

A. How to Keep Calm　　B. Self-protection

C. A usual lesson　　D. Danger

B

Four Posters

Live Music-Late Night Jazz

Enjoy real American jazz. Herbie Davis, the famous trumpet player, is known to play well.

PLACE: The Jazz Club　　DATES: 10—25 March

PRICE: ¥80～100　　TIME: 10:30 p.m. till late night　　Tel: 86468876

Scottish Dancing

Scottish dancing is nice and easy to learn. The Wonderful dance from England will be given.

PLACE: Jack Stein's　　DATES: 12—19 July

PRICE: ¥120　　TIME: 7:30 a.m. —11:00 p.m.　　TEL: 86427718

Shows in Shandong Museum	**The Hotels**		
The great Collection of the Province		SUN HOTEL	ROSE HOTEL
Museum of Shandong	1 Oct – 31 Dec	¥ 160	¥ 190
There are 12000 pieces on show here. You can see the whole Chinese history.	1 Jan – 31 Mar	¥ 128	¥ 190
	1 Apr – 30 Apr (closed)…		
PLACE: Shandong Museum	1 May – 31 May	¥ 198	¥ 218
DATES: 1 Jun. – 1 Aug.	1 Jun – 30 Sep	¥ 210	¥ 260
PRICE: ¥ 50 (¥25 for student)	TEL : 86486789		
TIME: Monday—Friday	E-mail: lihong @ yahoo. com		
9:00 a.m.—5:00 p.m.			
Weekends: 9:30 a.m. — 9:00 p.m.			
TEL: 86488699			

36. Herbie Davis is the name of _____.

A. the Jazz Club　　B. American Jazz

C. a famous trumpet player　　D. a Chinese hotel

37. My friend Maricia wants to learn Scottish dancing. She can dial _____.

A. 86468876　　B. 86427718　　C. 86488699　　D. 86486789

38. If one teacher with four students goes to visit Shandong Museum, they will pay _____ for it.

A. ¥ 100　　B. ¥ 125　　C. ¥ 150　　D. ¥ 250

39. Sun Hotel and Rose Hotel are open for _____ months of the year.

A. nine　　B. ten　　C. eleven　　D. twelve

40. You have ¥ 128 and you can _____ in March.

A. listen to American jazz　　B. learn Scottish dancing

C. go to Shandong Museum　　D. stay in Rose Hotel for a night

第 II 卷　非选择题

三、短文填空

An important part of learning something is making sure you plan your time and use it well. If you want to 41._____ (记住) things well, you need to review　42. _____ (inform) you've learned. Try to follow the 43. _____ (建议).

Make a study timetable at least three 44. _____ （week） before your exams and follow time to relax and have 45. f_____.

While you are 46. _____ (study) have short regular breaks. Stand 47. _____ and walk

around---you will 48. f_____ more awake.

Don't 49. w_____ too much. If you feel nervous, you won't learn as well as if you are 50. _____ (relax).

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: Good morning. My name is Judy.

B: Nice to 51. _____ you, Judy.

A: I've come to apply for the position as a cashier.

B: Ok. 52. _____ did you graduate from?

A: I graduated from Jinan Vocational School, and my 53. _____ is Business.

B: Do you have any work 54. _____ in this field?

A:Yes, I have worked in a supermarket for three months.

B: Have you brought your resume with you?

A: Yes, 55. _____ it is.

B: Ok, we'll probably get back to you in a week.

A: Thank you very much for your consideration.

五、职场应用

优秀人才是企业发展的最大生产力。

假如你是某外企人力资源部的工作人员 John，面试了求职者 Wang Li，需要向经理 Mr. Smith 汇报。

任务一 阅读对话，填写任务单。

John: Good morning. Sit down, please.

Wang Li: Thank you.

John: Do you have a resume?

Wang Li: Yes, here you are.

John: What kind of job are you applying for?

Wang Li: I am applying for a position as a computer programmer.

John: What kind of education have you got?

Wang Li: I graduated from Shandong University.

John: What foreign languages can you speak?

Wang Li: I can speak English fluently and know a little French.

John: Do you have any work experience?

Wang Li: Yes, I once taught computer science in a high school in Jinan for 2 years.

John: What project have you ever taken part in?

Wang Li: I have taken part in the first engineering design of city general business computer network system.

John: Ok, we'll probably contact you in a week.

Wang Li: Thank you for your consideration.

Worksheet

Name	Wang Li
Position	(45)_____
Education	(46)_____
Foreign languages	(47)_____
(48)_____	once taught computer science in a high school in Jinan for 2 years
Project	the first (49)_____ of city general business computer network system.

任务二 根据面试信息，给人力资源部经理 Mr. Smith 发邮件告之。

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Dear Mr. Smith,

Yours,

John

综合训练三

第 I 卷 选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. —Do you want another drink?

—_____.

A. I don't think so　　B. My pleasure

C. Not at all　　D. Yes, please

2. —Hi, Jack! How's it going?

—_____. We are having a great time in the water park.

A .Terrible　　B. It's boring

C. Pretty good　　D. That's a good idea

3. "A white elephant" means something that is useless, _____ it may cost a lot of money.

A. unless　　B. until　　C. although　　D. since

4. —Poor Steve! I could hardly recognize him just now.

—_____. He has changed so much.

A. Never mind　　B. No problem

C. Me too　　D. Me neither

5. —Could I _____ your iPad, Alice?

—Of course. Here you are.

A. keep　　B. borrow　　C. lend　　D. return

6. —We're organizing a party next Saturday, and I'd like you to come.

—_____! I have another one that day. Thank you just the same.

A. Good luck　　B. What a pity

C. Never do it again　　D. Well done

7. The hotel is almost finished, but we _____ need one or two weeks to get ready for guests.

A. only　　B. also　　C. even　　D. still

8. My first _____ on him was that he was a kind and thoughtful young man.

A. expression　　B. attention　　C. satisfaction　　D. impression

9. —Would you please _____ the paper for me and see if there are any obvious mistakes?

—No problem.

A. look around　　B. look into　　C. look up　　D. look through

10. A notice was _____ in order to remind the students of the changed lecture time.

A. sent up　　B. given up　　C. set up　　D. put up

11. —Mike, are you free? How_____ playing table tennis together? I have joined a club.

—It sounds exciting.

A. to　　B. on　　C. about　　D. in

12. —Have a good trip!

—_____.

A. Me too　　B. Thank you　　C. Certainly　　D. No way

13. —Our class won the English speaking contest.

—Congratulations! You _____ be very proud of it.

A. must　　B. need　　C. needn't　　D. can't

14. Liu Ying lives with her grandparents in the countryside because _____ of her parents

work in the city.

A. both B. either C. neither D. none

15. —I don't know which T-shirt was _____, so I took them both.

—Yes, it's really difficult to choose.

A. well B. better C. best D. good

16. —Excuse me, is the supermarket far from here?

—No, it's about _____.

A. 7 minutes walk B. 7 minute walk

C. 7 minute's walk D. 7 minutes' walk

17. —Why are you so _____?

—Because our ping-pong player Wang Liqin has won the world championship.

A. excited B. exciting C. bored D. boring

18. —Why do you like the novel so much?

—Because it is the best one _____ I have ever read.

A. which B.who C. that D. what

19. All electronic computers _____ five units although they are of different kinds.

A. consist of B. rely on C. make up D. sum up

20. Henry is _____ tallest in his class.

A. three B. the three C. third D. the third

21. —Would you mind feeding the pet at noon?

—_____.

A. Have fun B. No, not at all C. Excuse me D. You're welcome

22. —Could you tell me _____?

—Yes. There is one on Center Street.

A. where can I buy some stamps

B. when you will take your vacation

C. when was the telephone invented

D. if there are any good restaurants around here

23. The gym _____ many years ago. It was for the 2008 Olympic Games.

A. build B. was built C. built D. was building

24. John works in a factory. He notices the following sign on production line. He needs to pay attention to his _____.



A. feet　　B. hands　　C. head　　D. eyes

25. Jack _____ butter on his toast.

A. spread　　B. caused　　C. sprang　　D. affected

26. Mrs. Smith _____ live in Italy, didn't she?

A. use to　　B. was used to　　C. is used to　　D. used to

27. Are you satisfied _____ what I said?

A. about　　B. to　　C. on　　D. with

28. — An official said that they _____ a new law to protect the tourists the next year.

— That's good news for tourists.

A. would make　　B. makes　　C. made　　D. have made

29. —Gulf Hotel. Can I help you?

—I'd like to _____ a double room.

A. take　　B. make　　C. book　　D. type

30. —I'll take my driving test tomorrow.

—_____!

A. Enjoy yourself　　B. Congratulations

C. Have a good day　　D. Good luck

二、阅读理解

A

※ You won't drown if you remember these rules:

- Never swim alone.
- Never swim at a beach if there is no life guard.
- Never swim after a meal or when you feel hungry or tired
- Never believe in rings (救生圈)or other swimming aids. You may lose them or they may let you sink.
- Don't stay in the water too long if it is cold.
- Never go out in a boat if you can't swim or if you are not wearing a life jacket.

※ If you get into difficulties, this is what you should do:

- Keep calm. Save your strength and your breath.
- Try to float on the water by moving your feet as if you are climbing some stairs.
- Raise your right arm and cry for help.

※ Remember:

- A red flag means that it is dangerous for all swimmers to enter the water.
- A blue flag means that it is dangerous for children and weak swimmers to enter the water.

31. Swimming is a good sport, _____.
A. and you'd better go swimming alone
B. but you'd better not go swimming after a tiring climb
C. so you should stay in the water for a long time
D. and you may swim when you see a red flag

32. Rings and other swimming aids _____.
A. can not be believed in when swimming
B. will never let you sink
C. will never be lost
D. are useless at all in swimming

33. If you see a blue flag, you should know _____ may swim there.
A. all swimmers B. only children
C. nobody D. strong swimmers

34. It is dangerous if _____.
A. you swim with others
B. you stay in the water for a short time
C. you cannot swim, but go boating alone
D. you wear a life jacket when boating

35. If you get into trouble, you should _____.
A. keeps silent B. climb the stairs
C. put up your right arm for help D. ask for a red flag

B

Here's the content of a book.

Unit	Readings	Skills	Words
Unit 1 Music	• Music & Feelings • Sad movies	• Understanding main ideas • Predicting by title	• Kinds of music • Music stars
Unit 2 Sports	• National sports • The ancient Olympic Games	• Understanding main ideas • Guessing meaning of new words	• Action verbs • Names of sports • Sports tools
Unit 3 Weather	• Weather service • Weather and nature	• Understanding main ideas • Guessing meaning of new words	• Weather conditions • Weather information
Unit 4 Culture	• Traveling in India • Body language in the United States	• Understanding main ideas • Predicting by title • Making inferences	• Culture studies • Culture and art
Unit 5 Space	• Living in space • The planets	• Understanding main ideas • Understanding attitude	• Space news • Space terms

36. If you are interested in music, you can read "_____".

A. National sports　　B. Sad movies

C. The planets　　D. Weather service

37. You can learn something about weather in _____.

A. Unit 1　　B. Unit 2　　C. Unit 3　　D. Unit 4

38. Words about _____ are in Unit 5.

A. music stars　　B. weather conditions

C. sports tools　　D. space news

39. In all the units, you can learn the skill of _____.

A. predicting by title

B. understanding attitude

C. understanding main ideas

D. guessing meaning of new words

40. You can't find item about _____ in the content of the book.

A. words　　B. readings　　C. grammars　　D. skills

第 II 卷　非选择题

三、短文填空

The class in America is almost the same 41._____ that in China. But something is 42. d_____. If a teacher asks you a question, you should give an answer. If you don't 43. u_____ the question, put up your hand and ask the teacher 44. _____ (repeat) it. There is no excuse for not doing your homework. If you 45. _____ (错过) a class, you should ask your teacher for the 46._____. You mustn't miss a test. If you are 47._____ (serious) ill, call and let the teacher know you will not be there for the test. Serious 48._____ (ill) is the only reason for missing a test. Be 49. _____ time! It is 50._____ (polite) to be late.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: 51._____ can I do for you?

B: Do you have any shirts?

A: We have some here. What size?

B: Size 41.

A: I see. This is a nice shirt.

B: Yes, that's the right size, but it's for my father. I'd 52._____ a blue and white shirt.

A: How 53._____ this one?

B: Yes. 54._____ much is it?

A: One hundred and eighty yuan.

B: Well, I'll take it. Here is the money.

A: 55._____ you.

五、职场应用

企业文化是企业的灵魂。企业文化活动能增强员工的团队意识，提升员工的凝聚力和归属感。

某外资公司打算召开年会，感谢员工一年来为公司做出的辛勤努力。假如你是企划部的工作人员，请根据下面的年会策划方案，写一份通知，发到公司办公群，告知全体员工。

Annual Meeting Plan

Purpose: To enhance team spirit and express thanks to all staff

Theme: New Hope, New Start!

Date: December 24th

Planner: Planning Department

Place: Blue Horizon International Hotel

Participants: all staff

Schedule:

Time	Activities
16:00	Take the assigned seats. Review the development of our company through a PPT.
16:20	Opening ceremony The general manager will deliver an opening speech.
16:30	6 department managers are scheduled to give reports on their work and state the plan for next year.
17:00	Commend（表彰） the outstanding staff of this year. The commended staff will get awards and take a group photo.
17:30	Performances and games
18:30	Dinner starts.

Expense budget(预算): 45,000 yuan

Matters needing attention:

1. All staff should be on time.

2. Every department should prepare a program.

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

Notice

Planning Department
December 18th

综合训练四

第 I 卷　选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. —I wish you a good time.
—_____.
A. Yes, do please　　B. Thank you
C. I'd like to　　D. All right

2. —It's hot today, isn't it?
—Yes. Why not _____ your jacket?
A. take off　　B. take care
C. take place　　D. take after

3. —I'm afraid I must be off.
—_____.
A. Don't mention it　　B. Must you? It's still early
C. A pleasure　　D. It's nothing

4. —I'm going to pay a visit to the farm. Would you like to come?
—_____.
A. With pleasure. But my mother is ill
B. It's very kind of you

C. No, not at all

D. That's all right

5. —Do you know _____?

—Yes, of course. It will be hosted by Beijing and Zhangjiakou.

A. How will be the 2022 Winter Olympics

B. when will be the next Winter Olympics

C. which city will host the 2022 Winter Olympics

D. where will be the next Winter Olympics

6. —How much is the ticket to Central Park?

—A one-way ticket _____ $ 40, and you can _____ another $ 20 for a round-trip.

A. costs, pay B. costs, spend C. spends, pay D. pays, pay

7. It's surprising that your brother _____ Russian so quickly—he hasn't lived there very long.

A. picked up B. looked up C. put up D. made up

8. The secretary arranged a(n) _____ time and place for the applicants to have an interview.

A. important B. spare C. public D. convenient

9. A society can not be successful if it throws tradition away, but it can not be successful _____ if we do something to stop progress.

A. either B. neither C. too D. also

10. Don't meet an "Internet friend" alone, _____ something dangerous may happen to you.

A. or B. but C. and D. yet

11. My cousin is very busy with his work. He has _____ time to read newspapers.

A. little B. few C. a little D. a few

12. —Can I help you?

—I'd like _____ for my twin daughters.

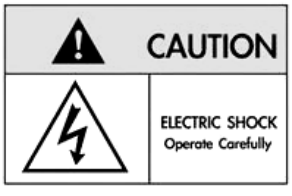
A. two pair of shoes B. two pairs of shoe

C. two pair of shoe D. two pairs of shoes

13. I have two sisters, but _____ of them is a teacher.

A. all B. neither C. both D. none

14. Tom is an electrician. He needs to be careful to operate because _____.



A. it's easy for fire break

B. it’s easy for electric shock
C. there is a flood
D. there is a heavy rain

15. My uncle lives _____116 Nanjing road. His room is _____ the sixth floor.
A. at, on　　B. to, at　　C. on , in　　D. of, to

16. —Have you_____ Mr.Wang?
—No, I haven’t. My computer doesn’t work.
A. heard from　　B. heard of　　C. replied to　　D. replied

17. —Look at the sign on the right.
—Oh, parking _____ here.
A. doesn’t allow　　B. isn’t allowed
C. didn’t allow　　D. wasn’t allowed

18. Zhang Li drives his car to another city. When he notices the following sign, he knows that _____.



A. people can park their truck here
B. people can’t park their truck here
C. this is not a car park
D. this is a truck park

19. — _____ I borrow your MP3?
— Sure. Here you are.
A. May　　B. Should　　C. Must　　D. Would

20. Emma always gets good grades in different exams because she is a _____ girl.
A. shy　　B. friendly　　C. hard-working　　D. polite

21. — Why do you collect so many old bikes?
—I’ll have them _____ and give away to the children who don’t have bikes.
A. fixed up　　B. used up　　C. set up　　D. given up

22. — Would you like some more tea?
—_____, please.
A. No more　　B. Just a little　　C. I’ve had enough　　D. Yes, I would

23. —Excuse me. _____?
—It is over there, near the bus stop.
A. How do you like the cinema　　B. May I ask you the way
C. Where is Bank of China　　D. How far is the market from here

24. —Shall we go hiking tomorrow?
—_____. The weather says the storm is coming.

A. Sure B. Good idea

C. I’m afraid we can’t D. That’s all right

25. Tom is driving to Beijing. He notices the sign in front of him. He has to stop because _____.



A. he is too tired and he wants to have a rest

B. there is some beautiful scenery near the road

C. there is something emergent happening on the road

D. he wants to eat something

26. —*The First Half of My Life* is a TV play _____ people can learn more about their life. Everyone should earn their own living and be independent.

—Yes. I like watching it very much.

A. which B. whose C. where D. that

27. —Do you have enough people to carry the boxes?

—No, I think we need _____ people.

A. another B. two others C. more two D. two more

28. —Do you think we should share our problems with our parents?

—Sure! _____ we talk to them, we’ll feel worse.

A. If B. When C. Because D. Unless

29. —Is Mr. Green really ill?

—_____. He is in hospital now.

A. I don’t think it is B. No, he isn’t

C. I hope so D. I’m afraid so

30. —Can you tell me how long you _____ the Huawei mobile phone, Mr. Zhang?

—Nearly a year. It works very well.

A. have bought B. had had C. have had D. bought

二、阅读理解

A

Jordan’s Annual Sale

This week only!

Garment: men’s, women’s and children’s clothing:
shoes, coats, and suits, skirts

Cosmetics: perfume, lipstick, and cream

Jewelry: watch, rings, earrings, and necklaces

Address: Fuxingmen Street

Open time: from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m.

Open!　10a.m. to 6 p.m.　　Stone
It is the time of a year again. We have many things on sales for your office.
All office furniture: desks, chairs, computer tables, and bookcases.　**20% off**
Computers, fax machines, and telephones.　**10% off**
Pens, ball-pens, paper, notebooks, backpacks　**5%**
Angel　is having a big week sale!　**Everything 30% off**
All TVs, radios, MP3, digital cameras and computers
29 Suzhou Street　Open from 9:30 a.m. to 6:30 p.m.

31. Jordan's is a _____.
A. restaurant　B. used goods market　C. bookstore　D. shopping mall

32. Bookcases are on sale in _____.
A. Stone　B. Angel
C. Jordan's　D. Fuxing shopping center

33. Angel has MP3 at _____ off.
A. 30%　B. 20%　C. 10%　D. 5%

34. Angel's sale is only for _____.
A. two days　B. five days　C. seven days　D. two weeks

35. Jordan's is at _____.
A. Fucheng Street　B. Suzhou Street
C. Fuxingmen Street　D. the main street

B

What will the house of the future look like? Could it have gardens on its walls, or a pool with fish for dinner? Architects believe that they are all possibilities. The only thing for sure is that the houses will be as green as possible.

The tree house

Many architects in the world would like to build a "tree house." Like a leaf, the surface of the house collects sunlight during the day. The energy can be used to heat water, produce electricity, and even create fresh air for the home. The "root" of the house is deep under the ground. It uses the soil to adjust the home's temperature.

The Lizard house

Like a lizard (蜥蜴), changing color with the weather is the most important design of a lizard house. When it's in the bright sun, the cover of the house will turn dark to protect it from strong heat. During dark days, it turns white and takes in as much light and heat as possible to produce energy.

Meals at home

This design is perhaps as much about the future of food production as architecture (建筑风格). It has gardens on the outside wall of the house. People can plant tomatoes, carrots and green tea on them. So every day in the morning, you just need to walk outside and collect your meals.

Learning from the past

Looking to the future isn't the only way to be green. Sometimes, ancient techniques (古老的技术) can also help cut down energy use. For example, a chimney (烟囱) can be a useful air conditioner because it is easier for hot air to flow out at the chimney.

36. We can heat water, produce electricity or create fresh air for the home_____.

A. with the root or a leaf　　B. with the energy from sunlight

C. with the soil under the ground　　D. with gardens on its walls

37. What will happen to the cover of the lizard house when it's in the bright sun?

A. It will take in light.　　B. It will produce energy.

C. It will turn dark.　　D. It will turn white.

38. The passage seems to tell us that meals at home in the future_____.

A. will be more delicious　　B. need more cooks

C. cost as much as possible　　D. will be greener

39. A chimney can be a useful air conditioner to _____.

A. flow out the hot air　　B. collect sunlight

C. produce energy　　D. protect the roof

40. What is the best title of the passage?

A. Green house of the future.　　B. The greener, the better.

C. How to build green houses.　　D. Changes of the houses.

第 II 卷　非选择

三、短文填空

On Sept. 19, 2014, Alibaba went public （上市） and raised $ 25 billion. Ma, a former English teacher, has become the 41._____ （rich） man in China. On a 1955 trip to the US, Ma was 42._____ (show) the 43.I_____ for the first time. Ma returned to 44._____ and set up a website 45._____ (call) China Pages without even knowing much about 46._____ (计算机). Four years later, Ma, his wife and his friends set 47._____ Alibaba in Hangzhou. He believed in the Internet 48._____ (busy) potential when few other Chinese did. 15 years later, Alibaba has 49._____ (发展) into the world's largest e-commerce 50._____ （公司）, owning popular shopping websites like Taobao and Tmall.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: Good morning, Dr. White's office. 51._____ can I do for you?

B: Good morning, this is John Brown. I'd like to make an appointment with Dr. White.

A: What's the 52. _____ with you?

B: I've got a pain 53. _____ my chest.

A: How long have you been like this?

B: For two days.

A: Well, let me see. How 54. _____ tomorrow? He will be available at 10 o'clock.

B: That's fine. 55. _____ you, I'll come by then.

五、职场应用

旅游业逐渐发展成为全球最大的新兴产业之一，也是我国重要的国民经济支柱产业。美国 Black 先生一家想来中国旅游。假如你是一家旅行社的导游 Li Hua，请根据 Black 先生一家的旅游要求，为他们制定合适的旅游计划。

任务一　阅读 Black 一家人来中国旅游的要求，完成下表。

We are looking forward to traveling to China. Chinese traditional culture, especially the Spring Festival, is what we expect to experience. My son, aged 12, wants to spend at least one day in a seaside city. My wife enjoys seafood very much. We have known that there are many places of interest in China, such as the Great Wall, the Confucius Temple and the Longmen Grottoes. We would be glad if we could visit at least one of them. We want the cost for each person to be below 11,850 yuan. We hope to stay in China for 6 days.

Worksheet

Requirements of the Blacks	Places to travel	A seaside city；(56)_____, the Confucius Temple, or the Longmen Grottoes
	Travel cost	Below (57) _____ yuan for each person
	Travel time	(58) _____ days.
	The number of travelers	(59) _____
	Food	His wife enjoys (60) _____.

任务二　根据 Black 一家人来中国旅游的要求，为他们制订合适的旅行计划，并给 Mr. Black 发 email 商议。

主要内容：

1. When will the Blacks come to China?
2. Where will they travel?
3. What activities will they have?
4. How much will they spend?

提示：The Spring Festival is on Jan 28th.

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数 80～120。

第四部分

参考答案

第一部分　英语知识运用参考答案

I. 单项选择

名词

1. C　2. C　3.B　4. A　5. B　6. A　7. B　8. A　9. A　10. C
11. B　12. C　13. B　14. B　15.D　16. B　17. A　18. D　19. B　20. B

代词

1. A　2. B　3. C　4. D　5. D　6. B　7. B　8. B　9. A　10. A
11. B　12. A　13. D　14. B　15. A　16. D　17. D　18. B　19. B　20. D

形容词

1. B　2. D　3. C　4. B　5. A　6. D　7. C　8. C　9. A　10. C
11. B　12. A　13. D　14. C　15. B　16. B　17. A　18. C　19. A　20. C

副词

1. C　2. C　3. C　4. C　5. B　6. A　7. C　8. D　9. B　10. D
11. C　12. C　13. D　14.B　15. B　16. D　17.D　18. B　19. D　20. C

数词

1. A　2. C　3. A　4. D　5. C　6. C　7. B　8. D　9. B　10. C
11. C　12. A　13. B　14. C　15. A　16. B　17. A　18. A　19. B　20.B

介词

1. A　2. A　3. D　4. A　5. A　6. A　7. D　8. D　9. A　10. B
11. A　12. A　13. B　14. A　15. B　16. C　17. C　18. B　19. C　20.C

冠词

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A
11. D 12. C 13. D 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. C 20.A

动词和动词短语

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B
11. D 12. D 13. A 14. C 15. D 16. B 17. B 18. D 19. B 20.A

动词的时态

1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. A 10.A
11. B 12. D 13. B 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. A 18. D 19. D 20.B

动词的被动语态

1. D 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. A
11. A 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. C 20.A

非谓语动词

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. D
11. B 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. B 17. D 18. B 19. A 20.C

情态动词

1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B
11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. C 19. A 20.C

简单句和并列句

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. A
11. D 12. B 13. **C** 14. D 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. B 19. A 20.D

状语从句

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. B
11. B 12.C 13. D 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. D 18. A 19. D 20.D

定语从句

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. D
11. B 12.C 13. B 14. B 15. A 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. A 20.C

名词性从句

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C
11. B 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. C 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. A 20.C

日常交际用语

（一）补全对话（每空只能填写一个单词）

1. How, do　2. your, favorite　3. What, time　4. weather, like　5. What's, doctor
6. how, much　7. speak, to　8. ready, to　9. idea, Where
10. good/great/wonderful, time
11. How, doing　12.Thank, you　13. all, same　14. what, time　15. wrong, with
16. I'm, sorry　17. doesn't, matter　18. Excuse；sorry　19. shall we　20. kind of
21. where, is　22. the, date　23. How, much　24.speak, to　25.this, is
26. No, thanks　27. same, to　28.Thanks, glad/pleased　29. When, either　30. think, so
31. Sorry, thanks　32. How, like　33.Why, don't　34. to, hear　35. have a
36. work, experience　37. salary, expect　38. open, apply　39. goal, be/become
40. interested, openings/vacancies

（二）补全对话（每空填写短语或句子）

(答案仅做参考)

1. Nothing special/ Nothing much/ Not too bad/ Good/ Fine/ It's OK.
2. Great. /Much better. / Quite well, thank you/So-so, thanks.
3. Let me introduce Mary to you. /Allow me to introduce Mary to you./ I'd like you to meet Mary./This is Mary. She is my friend.
4. Good-bye. / Bye-bye. /See you later. / So long.
5. I feel very weak. / I have a bad cold. / I have a headache.
6. Are you ready to order?/What about having something to eat?/Would you like something to eat?/May I take your order?
7. No, thank you./No more, thank you./Thank you. I have had enough./All right, but just a little.
8. I'd love to. /I'll be glad to./That's a good idea. /I'd love to, but I am very busy now./ Sorry. I'm afraid I can't, I've got to do my homewok first. / I wish I could, but I have to meet my father.
9. Which(What)animal(s)do you like best(most)？/ What is(are)your favorite animal (s)?
10. That's all right. /It doesn't matter./ That's nothing./Never mind.
11. Not at all./That's all right/You're welcome/ My pleasure/ Don't mention it.
12. No problem./Yes, do please./Yes/Certainly/Sure/Of course/ With pleasure.
13. What's the weather like(today)? / How's the weather(today)?

14. What day is today? /What day is it today? / What day of the week is it?

15. What's the date today? /What date is it today?

第二部分 答题策略参考答案

一、英语知识运用

专项训练一

1. A	2. B	3. C	4. B	5. C	6. B	7. D	8. C	9. A	10.C
11. C	12. C	13. C	14. D	15. C	16. B	17. D	18. A	19. C	20. A

专项训练二

1. C	2. D	3. A	4. B	5. C	6. D	7. C	8. B	9. A	10. C
11. A	12. D	13. A	14. B	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. C	20. C

专项训练三

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. D	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. B	10. A
11. C	12. C	13. B	14. C	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. A	19. B	20. A

专项训练四

1. C	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. D	6. A	7. B	8. A	9. A	10. D
11. B	12. D	13. A	14. C	15. B	16. D	17. A	18. C	19. C	20. B

专项训练五

1. D	2. C	3. C	4. A	5. C	6. D	7. B	8. C	9. D	10. A
11. B	12. A	13. B	14. B	15. D	16. D	17. A	18. C	19. A	20. B

专项训练六

1. C	2. D	3. A	4. D	5. C	6. A	7. B	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. B	12. B	13. D	14. A	15. B	16. A	17. B	18. D	19. C	20. B

专项训练七

1. A	2. A	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. A	7. C	8. B	9. B	10. C
11. D	12. C	13. C	14. B	15.B	16. C	17. C	18. C	19. C	20. D

专项训练八

1. C	2. B	3. C	4. A	5. A	6. B	7. D	8. B	9. C	10. A
11. B	12. D	13. A	14. D	15. D	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. C	20. B

专项训练九

1. B	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. B	6. C	7. D	8. A	9. D	10. B
11. D	12. B	13. B	14. D	15. A	16. C	17. D	18. B	19. C	20. D

专项训练十

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. D	6. D	7. C	8. B	9. B	10. B

11. C　12. B　13. B　14. B　15. C　16. B　17. C　18. C　19. B　20. A

二、阅读理解

A	1.B	2.A	3.C	4.C	5.D
B	1.B	2.D	3.C	4.A	5.D
C	1.A	2.C	3.B	4.C	5.A
D	1.B	2.A	3.B	4.C	5.B
E	1.C	2.A	3.B	4.B	5.B
F	1.A	2.D	3.A	4.C	5.C
G	1.D	2.A	3.C	4.B	5.D
H	1.A	2.D	3.A	4.B	5.A
I	1.A	2.B	3.C	4.C	5.C
J	1.A	2.C	3.C	4.B	5.B
K	1.B	2.C	3.D	4.C	5.D
L	1.C	2.D	3.D	4.B	5.A
M	1.C	2. A	3.B	4.B	5.C
N	1.D	2.D	3.C	4.A	5.C
O	1.D	2.D	3.A	4.B	5.C
P	1.D	2.D	3.C	4.B	5.A
Q	1.A	2.C	3.A	4.B	5.B
R	1.B	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. C
S	1.B	2. D	3. C	4. C	5. D
T	1.B	2. D	3. A	4. D	5. B

三、短文填空

A	1. first	2. son	3. in	4. interesting	5. buy
	6. busy	7. subject	8. weekends	9. about	10. me
B	1. four/4	2.autumn	3. weather	4. sunny	5. fishing
	6. thinks	7. comfortable	8. nor	9. make	10. you
C	1. us	2. practice	3. activities	4. that	5. develop
	6. with	7. relax	8. breathe	9. to	10. take
D	1. left	2. seen	3. cool	4. comfortable	5. bikes
	6. Fishing	7. successful	8. ourselves	9. arrived	10. but
E	1.traditional	2. greatest	3. himself	4. save	5. threw
	6. feed	7. From	8. eating	9. which/ that	10. quickly
F	1. thousands	2. choose	3. lower	4. computers	5.for
	6. save	7. Cutomers	8. buying	9. wonderful	10. about

G	1. first	2. excited	3. find	4. help	5. seat
	6. that	7. feel	8. about	9. or	10. flight
H	1.different	2.at	3. select	4. nervous	5. plans
	6. information	7. time	8. called	9. choosing	10. Because
I	1.vocational	2. appointment	3. chooses	4. more	5. communicate
	6. patient	7. friendly	8. her	9. member	10. for
J	1.stressed	2.feel	3. restaurant	4. improve	5. weight
	6. what	7. jogging	8.worse	9. suggestions	10. to
K	1. prefers	2. to	3. entered	4. professional	5. that
	6. easy-going	7. humorous	8. with	9. trouble	10. especially
L	1. It	2. to	3. information	4. tired	5. relax
	6. chatting	7. on	8. waste	9. playing	10. helpful
M	1. interesting	2. easily	3. plants	4. which/that	5. trips
	6. activities	7. member	8. with/against	9. realizing	10. natural
N	1. is used	2. helpful	3. understood	4. but	5. congratulations
	6. Nodding	7. meanings	8. you	9. with	10. comfortable
O	1. are	2. off	3. which/that	4. dirty	5. polluted
	6. harmful	7. cancer	8. breathe	9. solve	10. plant
P	1. living	2. pollution	3. chance	4. village	5. traffic
	6. fresh	7. friendly	8. hear	9. running	10. What
Q	1. advice	2. suggestions	3. it	4. be	5. Chinese
	6. possible	7. learn	8. remember	9. easily	10. to
R	1. October	2. when	3. joined	4. playing	5. hard
	6. won	7. In	8. women’s	9. our	10. learn
S	1. what	2. for	3. at	4. confidence	5. yourself
	6. easier	7. are	8.Talk	9. Internet	10. believe
T	1. instructions	2. pin	3. allow	4. flame	5. that/which
	6. spray	7. till/until	8. safe	9. out	10. starts

四、根据情景内容补全对话

（一）补全对话（每空只能填一个单词）

A: 1. graduate	2. be	3. major	4. skills	5. idea
B: 1. that	2. This	3. is	4. love /like	5. where

C: 1. book/reserve	2. What's	3.When	4. Where	5.Thank
D: 1. Who	2. How	3. old	4. look	5. like
E: 1. What's	2. How	3. often	4. Whom/Who	5. Why
F: 1. Nice/Glad/Pleased	2. happy/glad/pleased	3. how	4. experience	5. application
G: 1. down	2. meet	3. graduate	4.major	5.When
H: 1. How/What	2. About	3. When	4. think	5. of
I: 1.This	2. is	3. How	4. When	5. See
J: 1. What	2. name	3. course	4. Thanks	5. welcome
K: 1.applying	2. education	3. graduated	4. experience	5. Thanks
L: 1. help	2. booked	3. e-mail	4. address	5. right

（二）、补全对话（每空填写短语或句子）

(答案仅做参考)

A

1. Could/ May I speak to Jack please/ Is that Jack/ Is that Jack speaking,
2. Who is that/ Who is calling/ Who is speaking,
3. Would you like to come(to my party),
4. I'm afraid I can't /I won't be able to make it/I'm sorry to turn you down/I'm sorry .I have other plans,
5. Have a good time/ Have a good trip

B

1. What are you going to do/What about you,
2. What sport do you like best/What's your favorite sport,
3. Where will you play it,
4. How will you go there,
5.The same to you/Thank you

C

1. I'd like to buy a white shirt/ I want to buy a white shirt/ I'm looking for a white shirt,
2. What size do you want/ take,
3. Can/May I try it on,
4. How much is it/ How much does it cost/ What's the price of it/ What's the charge for it,
5. I will take it

D

1. What's wrong/ the matter/ the trouble with you,
2. Let me take your temperature,
3. How long have you been like this,
4. Nothing serious/Not serious
5. Thank you (very much/Thanks a lot

E

1. How can I get there/ Can you tell me how to get there/ Can you tell me how I can get there,
2. How far is it from here
3. Which bus should I take/ Which bus can I take
4. How long does it take(me to get there)
5. Thank you (very much/Thanks a lot/Thanks for your help

F

1. (I'm sorry,)I don't know. / (I'm sorry,)I have no idea. / (I'm sorry,)I'm new here.
2. Is there a hotel near here/nearby
3. How far is it/the hotel from here?/ How far is it?
4. How can I get(arrive) there? / How can I get to / arrive at / reach the hotel?
5. Thank you(very much). / Thanks(a lot). / Many thanks.

G

1. Take a seat, please. / Be seated, please. / Sit down, please.
2. May I take your order? /Are you ready to order?/Would you like something to eat?
3. Would you like something to drink?/Will you have something to drink?/What would you like to drink?
4. Anything else?/ Would you like anything else?
5. Can I have the bill now?

H

1. Good morning…
2. I have a cold/ I have got a fever/ I have a pain in my head/ There is something wrong with my nose…
3. For two days/Since last night…
4. Is it serious/ Is there anything（much）wrong (with me) …
5. Thank you/ Thanks a lot/ Thanks…

I

1. Can I help you?／What can I do for you?／May I help you?/ Is there anything (that) I can do for you?
2. What size does he/your son wear/take? / What size?
3. How much is it?／ How much does it cost? / What's the price of it?
4. I'll take／have／get it.
5. You're welcome. / That's all right. / Not at all./ It's my pleasure.

J

1. How are you(doing)?
2. I'd love/ like to
3. why don't you ask Jenny / why not ask Jenny /how(what) about Jenny
4. Sure/ Of course / No problem/ Certainly
5. enjoy yourself/ have fun/ have a good/ nice/ great/wonderful time

K

1. Hello/Good morning/Good afternoon/…
2. what experience do you have/what experience have you got/…
3. Do you want to work full-time or part-time
4. what are your salary expectations/how much are you looking for?/…
5. You are welcome/It's my pleasure/Don't mention it…

五、职场应用

（参考答案,答案不唯一）

（一）

Welcome to our restaurant. We provide $8 Lunch Buffet from 11:30am to 2:00pm during January. You can taste great Indian food here from Monday to Friday. You can also enjoy a free glass of house wine to stay warm.

We are providing new service. You can visit our website *order. Baluch-restaurant. com* to order online. You choose your favorite dishes and we deliver. You may pay cash on delivery.

All the service is available at our Queens and Tribeca branches.

Enjoy your meal!

（二）

We did a survey on skipping classes at some universities. To our surprise, there are about 77 percent of the students who have ever been absent from classes. 30 percent of them think classes are too boring and 22 percent of them skip classes to sleep. I hope teachers at the universities can try more ways to make classes lively and interesting. I want to tell the students

who skip classes for sleeping to go to bed early and not to stay up. So they can be energetic in classes. As for the students who skip classes to take part in entertainment or club activities, I advise them to do the activities after classes.

（三）

任务一

(1) Beijing (2) All over Asia (3) 60 (4) A five-star chef (5) ￥300

任务二

I booked six tables at Guangming Restaurant. It is near our company. We can walk there after meeting. They have a combination of different food styles, such as Chinese food, Japanese food, pizza and barbecue. Everyone can find some food that they love. And they can enjoy Coke, wine, beer and other soft drinks. Of course, Guangming Restaurant has some five-star chefs. I believe they can satisfy different tastes of the people from all over Asia. And the price is reasonable. It's about 200 yuan per person. I think it is very suitable for us. What do you think of it?

（四）

任务一

(1) cooking (2) 30 (3) 15 (4) 25 (5) music

任务二

(以 cooking club 为例)

Do you enjoy delicious food?

Do you enjoy delicious food? Do you want to make delicious food for your family and friends? Cooking Club is inviting new members to experience the pleasure of cooking. Come and join us every Sunday afternoon at Room 301, No. 2 Teaching Building. You will have a good chance to taste delicious food.

It's free to be a member of the club.

Good food brings good life!

Please contact us at 67845127.

（五）

任务一

(1) supervision　(2) cooked　(3) two or three days'　(4) 5:30　(5) 50

任务二

Join us – Summer Care Center

Aims

The summer holiday is coming. We will set up a Summer Care Center to give the children a meaningful holiday and help the parents take care of the children.



When
Mon.—Fri.
8:00am — 5:30pm

Where
Room 201
Community Center

Cost
50yuan/ day

Special offer

We will offer homework supervision and invite some college volunteers to help your children study for the new term. We will also organize some outdoor activities, like swimming, hiking, and even some trips to give the children chances to have different holiday experience. If the parents are too busy to cook lunch for the children, we will offer cooked lunch to them.

For more information, please call us at 15498762148.

（六）

任务一

(1) Sophie　(2) stomachache　(3) coughing　(4) dizzy　(5) a pain in the neck
(6) a cold　(7) Play computer games　(8) Exercise more and eat less
(9) pills　(10) Stand up

任务二

How to develop healthy living habits?

Healthy living habits are very important for our life and study. The following are some tips about developing healthy living habits.

1. Don't eat too much no matter how delicious the food is. If you are heavy, you'd better eat less and try to do more exercise to lose weight and keep healthy!

2. Dress warmly, especially on cold days. Girls want to be pretty, but health is more important than beauty. If you have a cold, you'd better drink more hot water and take the medicine on time as the doctor tells you.

3. Remember not to play computer games for too long. It does harm to their eyes to play computer games for a long time.So they had better play computer games less than 2 hours every day and stand up from the chair every hour. Do some eye exercises.

（七）

任务一

(1) Australian (2) sales manager (3) October 2nd (4) teacher (5) 12

任务二

Dear Mark,

How do you do? I am very glad to plan your wedding ceremony. On October 1st, we will pick up Li Lan's relatives and friends from Zibo. After arriving in Qingdao, they will stay in Qingdao Hotel, where the wedding ceremony will be held. At 8:00 a.m. on October 2nd, Li Lan is to dress up and choose her beautiful wedding dress. During the wedding ceremony, you will exchange your wedding rings, so get them ready ahead of time. After the wedding ceremony, all of the colleagues and friends can take photos and have a wonderful dinner in the hotel. On October 3rd, you will fly to Hainan Island to start your honeymoon.

I hope you are satisfied with it.

Yours,
David

（八）

任务一

(1) 10,000 square meters (2) 2 badminton courts (3) 5 years

(4) within 90 days (5) less than 2 million yuan

任务二

Ladies and gentlemen,

Good morning! It's a great honor to stand here to present our company. Our company has a history of 15 years with a fine fame. We have already presented our Business License and some pictures of our successful achievements, so you can have a clear idea of our company. All materials we will use are of top quality in our country. After considering all the factors, we promise that the cost will not be more than 1.8 million yuan within 80 days' work. What' more, we can surely offer you 6-year quality guarantee time. We'd appreciate it very much if you could give us the opportunity to work for you.

Thank you!

（九）

任务一

(1)making new friends (2) he is too shy to talk to others

(3) playing computer games (4)Peter (5) failed in the/his Chinese test

任务二

参考范文 1：

Dear Jim,

I'm very glad that I can give you a hand. Please don't worry about having no friends any

more. Just try these ways.

Always remember to be kind to your new classmates, which shows that you are easy to get along with. You can also find someone who looks easy-going and talk with him. I have tried that and it worked. Why don't you join some clubs if you want to have more friends? You can meet more people who have the same interests with you. Then you can be good friends easily. Take my advice and things won't be as bad as you think.

I really hope my suggestions can be helpful and that everything goes well with you.

Yours,
Li Na

参考范文 2：

Dear Cathy,

I'm very glad that I can give you a hand. Please don't worry. Your trouble is very common these days. You can try these ways.

Your parents think you play computer games too much, but the fact is that you are looking through something useful on the computer. Why not talk with your parents and tell them the truth? Always remember your parents love you and they are understanding. You can also tell them you will spend less time on it and try to find other ways to solve your problems of learning. It's a good idea to listen to music on the computer with your parents. Take my advice and things won't be as bad as you think.

I really hope that everything goes well with you.

Yours,
Li Na

参考范文 3：

Dear Peter,

I'm very glad that I can give you a hand. Please don't worry about it any more. Here are some useful tips.

Firstly, you can learn Chinese by listening to Chinese songs, which can help you remember more words and enjoy learning it. Secondly, why not ask teachers for help? Teachers are always helpful. Thirdly, it's useful to take notes and go over them more often. The last, studying with a group is a good way to learn Chinese, because you can get help from your partners. Take my advice and things won't be as bad as you think.

I really hope everything goes well with you.

Yours,
Li Na

（十）

We all want to live in a friendly and harmonious society. However, according to our survey, 89% of the people play with mobile phones in lectures or meetings; 35.3% of the

people don't want to offer seats to the old or the pregnant; and 44% of the people throw away the rubbish freely. It's really a shame that not all people can behave well.

It's our duty to be civilized. We should make efforts to do what we can. Let's greet our parents or teachers actively. We should not play with mobile phones in lectures or meetings. Nor should we throw away the rubbish freely. We'd better put the things we don't need where they were while shopping. We should save water in everyday life. We need to care for others and offer seats to the old or the pregnant on the bus.

If we do a little every day, our world will be better. Let's take action now.

第三部分 综合训练参考答案

综合训练一

一、英语知识运用

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. A	5. A
6. B	7. A	8. B	9. B	10. A
11. B	12. C	13. A	14.B	15. A
16. D	17. B	18. D	19. A	20. C
21. C	22. A	23.A	24. A	25. B
26. C	27. A	28. A	29. D	30. A

二、阅读理解

A 31. C 32. B 33. D 34. D 35. A

B 36. B 37. C 38. D 39. A 40. B

三、短文填空

41. healthy 42.lifestyle 43. us 44. favorite/favourite 45. water

46. of 47. to 48. eating 49. spend 50. jogging

四、根据情景内容补全对话（答案不唯一）

51. some steak/some rice…

52. would you like a salad/will you have a salad/do you want a salad ...

53. Italian/French/Italian dressing/French dressing./Neither./Neither of them…

54. What kind of drink would you like/What would you like to drink/How about drinks/What about drinks/Would you like something to drink/Anything to drink…

55. You are welcome/That's all right/It's my pleasure…

五、职场应用

Dear Linda，

How are you doing these days? I have good news for you. I've got two tickets for a grand concert on Christmas Eve by Langlang, the world-famous pianist. I'd like to invite you to be present at the concert on December 24th. It starts at 19:00 and will last two hours. It will be held in MasterCard Center, which is at No.69 Fuxing Road, Haidian District, Beijing.

I do hope that you can come and enjoy the concert with me. I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Sara

综合训练二

一、英语知识运用

1. D	2. A	3. B	4. D	5. D
6. D	7. D	8. A	9. A	10. C
11. C	12. B	13. A	14. D	15. A
16. D	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. B
21. A	22. C	23. B	24. C	25. B
26. A	27. B	28. D	29. C	30. B

二、阅读理解

A　31. D　32. B　33. C　34. C　35. B

B　36. C　37. B　38. C　39. C　40. A

三、短文填空

41. remember　42. information　43. advice/suggestions/tips　44. weeks　45. fun

46. studying　47. up　48. feel　49. worry　50. relaxed

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. meet　52. Where　53. major　54. experience　55. here

五、职场应用

任务一

(56) computer programmer　(57) Shandong University　(58) English, French

(59) Work experience (60) engineering design

任务二

Dear Mr. Smith,

How are you? Recently we have interviewed some applicants. One applicant called Wang Li is excellent among them. I am eager to recommend this outstanding young man to our company.

Wang Li graduated from Shandong University. It is very important for our company that he can speak fluent English and a little French. He has some experience in teaching computer science in a high school. He once took part in the first engineering design of city general business computer network system, which shows that he is skilled at writing computer programs. I think he is suitable for the position as a computer programmer.

Yours,

John

综合训练三

一、英语知识运用

1. D	2. C	3. C	4. D	5. B
6. B	7. D	8. D	9. D	10. D
11. C	12. B	13. A	14. A	15. B
16. D	17. A	18. C	19. A	20. D
21. B	22. D	23. B	24. B	25. A
26. D	27. D	28. A	29. C	30. D

二、阅读理解

A 31. B 32. A 33. D 34. C 35. C

B 36. B 37. C 38. D 39. C 40. C

三、短文填空

41. as	42. different	43. understand	44. to repeat	45. miss
46. homework	47. seriously	48. illness	49. on	50. impolite

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. What 52. like 53. about 54. How 55. Thank

五、职场应用

Notice

To enhance team spirit and express thanks to all the staff, our company is to hold the annual meeting at 4:00 p.m. on Dec. 24th in Blue Horizon International Hotel. All the staff are required to attend the meeting on time. At the meeting, six department managers are scheduled to give reports on their work and state the plan for next year. The general manager will commend the outstanding staff of this year. As usual, we will have dinner together. But before dinner, we will play some interesting games. The winners will get nice gifts.

Wish everyone a good time.

Planning Department

December 18th

综合训练四

一、英语知识运用

1. B	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. C
6. A	7. A	8. D	9. A	10. A
11. A	12. D	13. B	14. B	15. A
16. C	17. B	18. B	19. A	20. C
21. A	22. B	23. C	24. C	25. C
26. C	27. D	28. D	29. D	30. C

二、阅读理解

A　31. D　32. A　33. A　34. C　35. C

B　36. B　37. C　38. D　39. A　40. A

三、短文填空

41. richest	42. shown	43. Internet	44.China	45.called
46.computers	47. up	48. business	49.developed	50. company

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. What　52. matter/trouble/problem　53. in　54.about　55. Thank

五、职场应用

任务一

(56) the Great Wall (57) 11,850 (58) 6 (59) 3 (60) seafood

任务二

Dear Mr Black,

I'm glad to discuss your travel plan with you. It would be wonderful if you can come to China on Jan 24. I advise you to go to Hainan on Jan 25 to view the sea and taste the seafood, because the weather there is warm even if it's in winter. The Confucius Temple is famous around the world. It's in Qufu, Shandong Province. On Jan 26, you can fly to Jinan, and then go to Qufu by train. After visiting the Confucius Temple, you stay in Qufu for one night. The next day, you take a high-speed rail to Beijing. The Great Wall is waiting for you there. Our traditional festival—the Spring Festival will be celebrated on Jan 28. You can spend the festival with people in Beijing. You can make dumplings, play fireworks and so on. On Jan 29, you fly back to America. The total cost may be less than 24,000 yuan.

Look forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua